

沸腾英语 Fit English

中考英语

语法

蔡晔 主编

广外中学英语新课程研究组 编写



YZLI0890146426



沸腾英语

Fit English

中考
英语 语法

- 中考英语多项技能考前冲刺
- 中考英语考纲词汇
- 中考英语完形填空
- 中考英语完形填空与阅读理解
- 中考英语写作
- 中考英语语法
- 中考英语阅读理解

学到沸腾，拒绝夹生，超越 100°C ，考试百分百！

责任编辑：李树谋

封面设计：唐韵设计 010-82780710
tangyunby.com

客服专线：010-62713270

ISBN 978-7-5361-4115-5



9 787536 141155 >

定价：18.00元

ISBN 978-7-5361-4115-2

沸腾英语 Fit English

中考英语

语法



蔡晔 主编

广外中学英语新课程研究组 编写

YUFA



YZLI0890146426



广东高等教育出版社

· 广州 ·

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

中考英语语法/蔡晔主编;广外中学英语新课程研究组
编写. —广州:广东高等教育出版社,2011.7

ISBN 978-7-5361-4115-5

I. ①中… II. ①蔡…②广… III. ①英语-语法-初中-升学
参考资料 IV. ①G634.413

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2011)第 140329 号

中考英语语法

蔡晔 主编

广外中学英语新课程研究组 编写

广东高等教育出版社出版发行

地址:广州市天河区林和西横路 邮编:510500

网址:www.gdgjs.com.cn

广州市穗彩彩印厂印刷

787 毫米×1092 毫米 1/16 10.5 印张 275 千字

2011 年 7 月第 1 版 2011 年 7 月第 1 次印刷

定价:18.00 元

英语语法在教学及各类考试中的重点、难点都是具体的词汇用法、句型结构、特殊表达法等,目的在于检测学生是否真正掌握并会正确运用每个具体的词汇、句型。但是,英语语法绝不是孤立的条条框框,而是词法与句法有机统一的整体。

为了解决同学们英语语法学习系统性不足的难题,我们组织了一批优秀的一线教师编写了这本语法配套用书,旨在系统展现英语词法、句法的知识点,使同学们能够尽快系统地掌握语法知识,为听说读写译打下坚实的基础。

本丛书特色:

1. 实用性

虽然同一年级不同版本教材的内容编排有较大差别,但教材中所涉及的语法点基本相同。因此,编者整合了各版本教材的语法点,进行系统编排。同时,本书结合近三年各地中考试题对语法知识的考查情况,将基本用法、重难点、易错点进行了梳理、归纳和演绎,又设计了大量针对性训练题,以练促学,强化学生对各语法知识点的理解和应用。本书既方便学生同步自学自测使用,又可以作为教师随堂训练和课后作业使用。

2. 系统性

本书按照中考考试大纲罗列的语法知识点编排。通过“考点透视”、“真题再现”、“实战模拟”三个部分,集结了大纲列出的每个语法知识点的所有概念法则,剖析了历年中考中所考的每个语法知识点,囊括了每个知识点的所有测试题型。从重难点解析到重难点突破,从基础到综合,难度适中,主次分明。

3. 强化训练

本书题型灵活多变,对重要的语法点通过不同的形式进行强化演练,题量充足,起到了加深理解和强化记忆的作用。

本丛书使用说明:

1、随堂练习

由于本书与教材完全同步,因此,可以在课堂上同步使用,包括语法知识学习和做与之相应的“真题再现”的练习。

2. 课后作业

我们在每章后设置了“实战模拟”练习,完全仿真中考试题,甚至部分题就是中考试题,这样便于同学们熟悉中考试题,明确各知识点的掌握程度。同学们可以把这些练习题作为单元复习检测的家庭作业来完成。

3. 巩固提高

分为三个步骤:

第一步,整理错题。

第二步,朗读例句。“考点透视”部分的例句,务必大声朗读,越熟练越好。另外,建议同学们将所有练习题的答案写到横线上,也当成例句反复朗读,直到非常熟练甚至能够脱口而出为止。

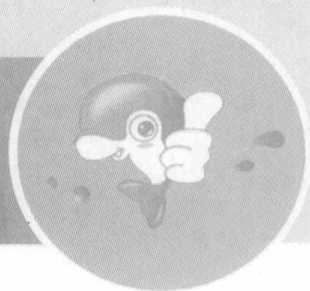
第三步,默写规则。“考点1”、“考点2”等部分所讲的语法规则,要求在完全理解的基础上将其背下来。这样,语法才算学扎实了,才能在实际应用中融会贯通。

本书是一本不可多得的配套语法辅导书,如果同学们能按照我们建议的方法坚持学习,就一定能快速准确地掌握语法,成为真正的英语达人。

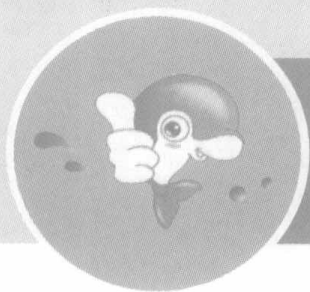
学英语就像烧开水,要一鼓作气,不能烧一把,停一阵再去烧。否则,水永远是温水。因此,我们要持之以恒,学到沸腾,消灭夹生,才能突破高分!

“沸腾英语,让您的英语成绩沸腾起来!”

编者



第1章 名词	1	第7章 时态与语态	49
考点透视	1	考点透视	49
真题再现	4	真题再现	52
实战模拟	5	实战模拟	54
第2章 冠词	7	第8章 数词	56
考点透视	7	考点透视	56
真题再现	9	真题再现	62
实战模拟	10	实战模拟	63
第3章 动词与动词词组	12	第9章 非谓语动词	64
考点透视	12	考点透视	64
真题再现	22	真题再现	66
实战模拟	24	实战模拟	67
第4章 形容词与副词	26	第10章 宾语从句	70
考点透视	26	考点透视	70
真题再现	29	真题再现	71
实战模拟	31	实战模拟	72
第5章 代词	35	第11章 反意疑问句	74
考点透视	35	考点透视	74
真题再现	39	真题再现	76
实战模拟	41	实战模拟	77
第6章 介词	43	第12章 定语从句	79
考点透视	43	考点透视	79
真题再现	46	真题再现	81
实战模拟	47	实战模拟	82



目录

Contents

第13章 并列连词和并列句.....	85	实战模拟	100
考点透视	85	第18章 名词性从句	102
真题再现	86	考点透视	102
实战模拟	87	真题再现	102
第14章 从属连词与状语从句.....	88	实战模拟	103
考点透视	88	第19章 独立主格结构与省略	104
真题再现	89	考点透视	104
实战模拟	90	真题再现	106
第15章 主谓一致.....	91	实战模拟	107
考点透视	91	第20章 易混词辨析	109
真题再现	94	考点透视	109
实战模拟	94	真题再现	128
第16章 倒装句.....	96	实战模拟	129
考点透视	96	第21章 情景交际题	132
真题再现	97	考点透视	132
实战模拟	97	真题再现	142
第17章 强调句.....	99	实战模拟	143
考点透视	99	答案与解析	147
真题再现	99	附录	160



第1章 名词

名词是英语中最重要的词类之一,是历年中考必考的一类词,也是考点较为集中的一类词。中考对名词的考查主要体现在两个方面:一是单独考查名词词义辨析,二是与冠词结合一起考查。从考查的内容和知识点来看,主要涉及:(1)名词的单复数;(2)不可数名词量的表达;(3)名词所有格;(4)作主语的名词和谓语动词的匹配规则。另外名词作定语、名词词义的运用等也应引起重视。



考点透视

考点1 名词复数的规则变化

(1)一般在名词后加-s。如:

car→cars 小汽车; ruler→rulers 尺子; hour→hours 小时; gate→gates 大门; lip→lips 嘴唇; machine→machines 机器; bird→birds 小鸟; gift→gifts 礼物

(2)以 s, x, sh, ch 结尾的名词,通常在词尾加-es。如:

bus→buses 公共汽车; dish→dishes 碟子; watch→watches 手表; box→boxes 盒子; bench→benches 长凳; class→classes 班级; brush→brushes 刷子

特别记忆 stomach 虽然是以 ch 结尾,但 ch 不发[tʃ],而发[k],因此加-s,不加-es。

(3)以 o 结尾的名词多数加-s,如果是元音字母加-o 结尾的名词一律加-s。如:

piano→pianos 钢琴; zoo→zoos 动物园; photo→photos 照片; radio→radios 收音机; kilo→kilos 千克; tobacco→tobaccos 烟草

特别记忆 少数以 o 结尾的名词加-es。如:

hero→heroes 英雄; tomato→tomatoes 西红柿; potato→potatoes 土豆

(4)以辅音字母+y 结尾的名词,变 y 为 i,再加-es。如:

family→families 家庭; lady→ladies 女士; country→countries 国家; city→cities 城市; baby→babies 婴儿; duty→duties 责任

(5)以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词,大多数变 f 或 fe 为 v,再加-es。如:

leaf→leaves 叶子; wife→wives 妻子; shelf→shelves 架子; wolf→wolves 狼; knife→knives 刀子; half→halves 一半; life→lives 生命

特别记忆 下面几个名词直接加-s:

roof→roofs 屋顶 chief→chiefs 首领 gulf→gulfs 海湾

考点2 名词复数的不规则变化

名词的不规则复数形式,大体有以下几种情况:

(1)复数形式通过改变元音等来构成。

有些把 oo 变为 ee。如:foot→feet 脚; goose→geese 鹅; tooth→teeth 牙齿

有些把 a 变为 e。如:man→men 男人; woman→women 女人

有些增加字母。如:ox→oxen 公牛; child→children 孩子

有些须改变拼写方式。如:mouse→mice 老鼠

(2)单复数形式相同。

①词尾无 s 的单复数同形的名词。如:

Chinese 中国人; Japanese 日本人; sheep 羊; fish 鱼; deer 小鹿; aircraft 飞机; spacecraft 宇宙飞船。

②词尾有 s 的名词单复数同形。如:

works 作品; means 方法; crossroads 十字路口

③有些单数形式的名词具有复数意义。如:

people 人们, 人民; public 公众; police 警察

(3)有些名词只用复数形式。如:

shorts 短裤; sunglasses 太阳镜; stairs 楼梯; congratulations 祝贺; brains 大脑; clothes 衣服; goods 货物; scissors 剪刀; savings 储蓄

考点 3 复合名词的复数形式

(1)“名词 + man 或 woman”构成的复合名词,变复数形式应把 man 改为 men, woman 变为 women。如:

Englishman → Englishmen 英国男人; Frenchwoman → Frenchwomen 法国女人

(2)由“man 或 woman + 名词”构成的名词词组,变复数时需要将名词 man 和 woman 及其他名词都变成复数。如:

man doctor → men doctors 男医生; woman judge → women judges 女法官

考点 4 不可数名词的量的表示方法

(1)用 some, much, a little, little, a lot of, a bit of, plenty of 等表示“多少”。如:

There is little ink in my pen. 我的钢笔里没有多少墨水了。

We should collect some useful information. 我们应该收集一些有用的信息。

(2)用“数词(或 a / an, many 等) + 单位词 + of + 不可数名词”的结构。如:

a cup of 一杯; a piece of 一片; a bottle of 一瓶; a glass of 一杯; a bag of 一包; a pair of 一双。

在这种结构中 of 后还可以接可数名词的复数形式。如:

My mother bought a pair of shoes for me yesterday. 昨天我妈妈给我买了一双鞋。

考点 5 's 所有格

(1)单数名词词尾加 -s, 复数名词词尾如果没有 s, 也要加 -s。如:

Tony's bike 托尼的自行车; Women's Day 妇女节

(2)如果名词以 s 结尾, 则加 “'” 即可。如:

my parents' hope 我父母的希望; the students' reading room 学生阅览室

(3)两个人或多个人共有有什么时, 只在最后一个人的名词后加 's, 但若为各自所有, 则需要在各个名词后加 's。如:

Mary and Lily's father 玛丽和莉莉的父亲; Tom's and Jack's room 汤姆和杰克各自的房间。

(4)以 s 结尾的专有名词构成所有格形式时, 加 's 或只加 “'”。如:

Mrs Jones's / Jones' house 琼斯太太的房子

特别记忆 (1)表示时间、距离、国家、地点、价值等无生命的名词的所有格也用 's 形式, 如: a few days' trip 几天的旅行。

(2)店铺、家、医院等处所有格也用 's 形式。如: at the barber's 在理发店

考点 6 of 所有格

无生命的东西, 一般用“名词 + of + 名词”的结构来表示, 但这一结构也可用于有生命的名词。



如:

the capital of China 中国首都; the colour of the room 房间的颜色; the cover of the book 书的封面; the legs of the desk 桌腿; the name of the girl = the girl's name 这个女孩的名字

考点7 双重所有格

(1)双重所有格中带有's所有格的名词必须是一个明确限定的指人的名词,同时of前面的名词必须不确指,如要有a, an, some, any, few, two, no, several等修饰语。如:

The girl is a daughter of Mr Wang's. 那个女孩是王老师的一个女儿。

Some friends of my brother's will come to join us. 我哥哥的一些朋友要来参加我们的活动。

(2)双重所有格中of后的名词必须是指人。若of所有格的介词宾语为专有名词,通常只用双重所有格。如:

错误:a leg of the desk's, a bike of Bob

正确:a leg of the desk 桌子的一条腿; a bike of Bob's 鲍勃的一辆自行车

考点8 所有格的省略

(1)若所有格修饰的名词在上文已提到过,或两个名词所有格所修饰的词相同,则可省略第二个所有格后的名词。如:

This is not my book, but Mr Wang's. 这不是我的书,是王先生的。

Whose house is larger, Tom's or Susan's? 谁的房子大一些,汤姆的还是苏珊的?

(2)表示家、医院、店铺、学校、办公室等处所时,由“名词+'s”所有格所修饰的名词 house, shop, office等常被省略。如:

at the barber's(shop) 在理发店; at Tony's(home) 在托尼家; at the doctor's(office) 在诊所, 在医院; at the tailor's(shop) 在裁缝店

考点9 作主语的名词和谓语动词的匹配规则

(1)可数名词单数和不可数名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数;可数名词复数作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。如:

Many students have been to the Great Wall besides me. 除我之外很多学生都去过长城。

Happiness is the true value of life. 幸福是生活真正的价值。

This story is very exciting. 这个故事很棒。

(2)people, police等集体名词作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。如:

People have more interest in sports now. 现在人们对体育运动的兴趣更大了。

(3)当 family, team, class, public, crowd, enemy, group等集体名词作主语时,若强调整体,谓语动词用单数形式;若强调集体中的各个成员,则用复数形式。如:

Class One is the best class in this grade. 一班是这个年级最好的班级。

Class One are listening to music. 一班的同学正在听音乐。

(4)姓氏的复数与冠词连用,表示“夫妻俩”或“一家人”,作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。如:

The Whites are watching TV. 怀特一家人正在看电视。

考点10 考查名词的特殊情况

(1)有些名词在汉语中是可数的,但在英语里,它们常用作不可数名词。常见的有:

news 新闻,消息; chalk 粉笔; soap 肥皂; information 信息; advice 建议; weather 天气; progress 进步; bread 面包; equipment 装备; jewellery 珠宝; clothing 服装

(2)名词作定语一般用单数,但 man, woman, gentleman等词作定语时,所修饰词是单数则用单

数,所修饰词是复数则用复数。如:

a girl student 一名女学生; three girl students 三名女学生; a man doctor 一名男医生; two men doctors 两名男医生

但是有些只用复数形式的名词作定语。如:

a sports meet 运动会; a glasses shop 眼镜店; a clothes shop 服装店

(3)“数词+名词”作定语时,其中的名词也用单数形式。如:

He has an 11-year-old daughter. 他有一个 11 岁的女儿。



真题再现

- () 1. (安徽)—Could you tell me something about the boy who helped you just now?

—Sorry, I know nothing about him.

We are _____.

- A. friends B. neighbours
C. classmates D. strangers

【解析】D。由答语前面的:对不起,我不认识他,可知我们是“陌生人”。

- () 2. (河北) I don't think looking after children is just _____ work.

- A. woman B. woman's
C. women D. women's

【解析】D。句意为“我认为照看孩子不仅仅是女人的工作。”由句意可判断此处应用名词所有格,又因为 woman 的复数形式是 women, 故选 D。

- () 3. (娄底)—It's said that you have moved into a new house.

—Yeah, and we need to buy some _____ in the mall nearby.

- A. food B. furniture
C. hamburger

【解析】B。由上文可知,搬新家了,我们需要在附近购物中心买一些家具,故答案应选 B。

- () 4. (内江) _____ mothers can't go to the meeting, because they have gone to New York on business.

- A. Alice and Lily's
B. Alice's and Lily's
C. Alice's and Lily

【解析】B。考查名词所有格。A 选项是指她们共有的母亲; B 选项表示她们各自的母亲; C 选项没有这种表达形式,首先排除。由 mothers 可知,这里指的是她们各自的母亲,因此答案为 B。

- () 5. (东阳) I saw many _____ eating grass on the hill.

- A. horse B. cow
C. rabbit D. sheep

【解析】D。many 后跟名词复数, A、B、C 都不是复数, sheep 单复数同形, 故答案选 D。

- () 6. (广州) The letter from my uncle was short. There wasn't _____ news.

- A. many B. a few
C. much D. few

【解析】C。news 是不可数名词, 而 many/a few/few 都是修饰可数名词, 故选 C。

- () 7. (安徽)—Shall we go shopping now?

—Sorry. It's not the right _____.

I'm too tired.

- A. way B. weather
C. place D. moment

【解析】D。根据 I'm too tired “我太累了”可知现在不是时候, 故选 D。

- () 8. (昆明) After _____ practice, Lang Lang is a well-known pianist now.

- A. so many year
B. so many years
C. so many year's
D. so many years'

【解析】D。本题考查名词所有格的用法。



以-s 结尾的复数名词的所有格是在后面加“'”。

- () 9. (福州) Paper-making is _____ of ancient China.
- A. one of the greatest inventor
B. one of the greatest inventors



实战模拟

一、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. —How far is your cousin's home from here?
—It's about two _____ drive.
A. hour's B. hours
C. hours' D. hour
- () 2. —What's in the cupboard?
—A few _____, but little _____.
A. apples; coffee
B. coffee; apples
C. apple; coffees
D. coffees; apple
- () 3. It is five years since we began to enjoy a _____ spring holiday each year.
A. ten-day B. ten day
C. ten day's D. ten-days
- () 4. Look at the flowers! They are in different _____.: red, yellow, pink...
A. colours B. sizes
C. prices D. names
- () 5. —The environment here is better than before.
—I agree. There _____ less pollution now.
A. are B. is
C. were D. was
- () 6. —Two _____ died in the accident.
—_____ terrible it is!
A. policemen; How
B. policeman; What
C. police; What

C. one of the greatest invention

D. one of the greatest inventions

【解析】D. inventor“发明家”, invention“发明”。“one of + 形容词最高级 + 复数名词”表示“最……之一”。

D. policemen; How

- () 7. _____ mothers both work in the same hospital.
A. Tim and Peter's
B. Tim's and Peter
C. Tim's and Peter's
D. Tim and Peter
- () 8. A human _____ can do some things better than a computer, for example, creating new ideas.
A. head B. body
C. brain D. arm
- () 9. Mathematics _____ a very important subject.
A. are B. is
C. were D. was
- () 10. There are _____ from other presses. They are having a meeting in one of the _____ offices.
A. editor-in-chiefs; editor's-in-chief
B. editors-in-chief; editors-in-chief's
C. editors-in-chief's; editor's-in-chief's
D. editor-in-chief's; editors-in-chief

二、填空

A. 根据汉语提示填空。

- They suggested another _____ (发展) program to the government.
- Since 1989 Project Hope has built many schools and _____ (图书馆) all over China.
- Mr Smith gave us (一条) _____ advice on how to keep healthy.
- In order to save the trees on the earth,

we'd better use fewer _____ (纸袋).

5. In western countries people usually have meals with _____ (刀) and forks.

B. 用所给单词的适当形式填空。

6. He is _____ (Tom) and _____ (Mary) father.

7. Many historical _____ will be shown on National Day. (movie)

8. The little boy wants to be an _____ when he grows up. (act)

9. There are two Englishmen and three _____ in the room. (Japan)

10. Chocolate is usually the _____ favourite food. (child)

三、改错

请指出下面每个句子的错误并改正。

1. More and more foreign students come to China to learn a Chinese.

2. People of different age enjoy the popular TV program *The Same Song*.

3. This is not my book. It's my sister.

4. My grandfather went to the dentist and had two bad tooth pulled out.

5. How delicious! Could you please give me two more tomatos?



第2章 冠词

冠词是中考英语词汇中最小的词,但是几乎逢考必考。根据对各地中考试题的分析可知,该部分考点主要分布在单项选择、完形填空和短文改错三大题型之中。从考查的内容和知识点来看,中考对冠词的考查主要涉及:(1)不定冠词、定冠词和零冠词的基本用法。(2)冠词常见的习惯搭配用法。(3)部分物质名词抽象名词具体化之后的冠词用法。(4)冠词的位置。(5)习语或固定结构中的冠词。



考点透视

考点1 不定冠词的主要用法

(1)表示某人或某物,但不具体说明是哪一个。如:

This composition was written by a student. 这篇作文是一个学生写的。

(2)表示“一”这个数量概念,比 one 意思稍弱。如:

A year has 12 months. 一年有 12 个月。

(3)表示某一类人或事物。如:

Even a child can answer this question. 甚至小孩也能回答这个问题。

(4)和表示时间或度量衡的名词连用时表示“每”“每一”等。如:

I take medicine three times a day. 我一天吃 3 次药。

(5)用于某些固定词组。如:

have/take a shower 淋浴; have/take a bath 洗澡; take go a walk 散步; give a lecture 作演讲; have a headache 头痛; a lot of 许多; a few/little/bit 一些; have a try 试一试; take a break 休息一下; have a good time 玩得开心

考点2 定冠词的主要用法

(1)特指某人、某物,以区别于其他人、物。如:

The pen on the desk is mine. 桌子上的钢笔是我的。

(2)用于世界上独一无二的事物前。如: the sun, the moon, the earth, the sky, the world, the globe 等。

(3)用于序数词前。如: the first one, the second one 等。

(4)用于谈话双方都明确的人、物前。如:

Please close the door. 请把门关上。

(5)用于上文提到过的人、物前。如:

I bought a skirt yesterday. The skirt is red. 我昨天买了一条裙子,裙子是红色的。

(6)用于江、河、湖、海、山川、海湾、沙漠前。如:

the Changjiang River 长江; the Yellow River 黄河; the Himalayas 喜马拉雅山; the Taiwan Straits 台湾海峡; the Sahara 撒哈拉沙漠

(7)用于形容词最高级前。如:

Tom is the tallest in our class. 汤姆是我们班最高的。

(8)用于形容词前,表示一类人。如:

the old 老人; the poor 穷人; the Chinese 中国人

(9)用于由普通名词构成的专有名词前,如国家、组织机构、某些报纸名及公共建筑名前。如:

the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国; the United Nations 联合国; *The Times*《泰晤士报》; *The People's Daily*《人民日报》; the National Gallery 国家美术馆

(10)用于姓氏复数前,表示一家人或夫妇俩。如:

the Smiths 史密斯一家/史密斯夫妇; the whites 怀特一家/怀特夫妇

(11)用于演奏的乐器、文娱艺术活动等名称前。如:

play the piano/the violin/the flute/the cello 弹钢琴/拉小提琴/吹笛子/拉大提琴; go to the cinema/the theatre/the movies/the concert 去电影院/去剧院/去看电影/去音乐会

(12)当用来指人体部位时,在介词之后通常用 the 来代替物主代词。如:

He became very red in the face. 他的脸变得很红。

He was wounded in the leg. 他的腿受伤了。

beat sb. on the nose/head 击打某人鼻子/头部

be blind in the left/right eye 左/右眼睛瞎的

be deaf in the left/right ear 左/右耳朵聋的

(13)用于某些固定词组中。如:

in the morning/afternoon/evening/daytime 在上午/下午/晚上/白天; at the moment 此刻; on the phone 在电话上; the whole day 一整天; by the way 顺便说一下; in the end 最后; on the other hand 另一方面; on the whole 大体上; at/in the back of 在……的后部; in the front of 在……的前面

考点3 零冠词的主要用法(即不用冠词的情况)

(1)季节、月份、星期、节日前,一般不加冠词。如:

We have few classes on Saturday. 我们周六没有多少课。

Flowers come out in spring. 花儿在春天开放。

但有限定性定语修饰或表示某一特定的时间时,就要加定冠词。如:

She came to China in the spring of 2008. 她是在2008年的春天来到中国的。

Where do you plan to spend the summer holiday? 你打算在哪里过暑假?

(2)在描述交通方式时。如: by car, by bus, by bike, by train, on foot 等。又如:

I go to school by bus every day. 我每天乘公共汽车去上学。

但在 take a bus, come in a boat, on the train/bus 等表示具体的交通工具时要用冠词。

(3)球类、棋类等体育运动以及三餐前一般不用冠词。如:

play football/table tennis/chess/cards 踢足球/打乒乓球/下棋/打牌; have breakfast/lunch/dinner 吃早餐/午餐/晚餐

特别记忆 如特指某一餐,需加不定冠词 a/an。如:

We had a wonderful dinner last night. 昨晚我们享用了一顿丰盛的晚餐。

(4)称呼语或指家里雇用的 nurse, cook 等名词前及表示独一无二的头衔、职务的名词作宾语、补语及同位语时,一般不加冠词。如:

What's this, father? 爸爸,这是什么?

He was elected chairman of the committee. 他当选为协会主席。

(5)在“单数名词+after/by+同一单数名词”(表示“一个接一个”)的结构中,单数可数名词前不



加冠词。如：

He kept on studying day after day. 他坚持天天学习。

(6) church, school, hospital, prison, university 等单数可数名词指机构时,其前常不用冠词;如果不指机构而指一座具体建筑,其前又常用冠词。如：

She stayed in hospital for three weeks after the accident. 事故后她住院住了3个星期。

He walked into the hospital through a side entrance. 他从侧面的入口进了医院。

特别记忆 用法类似的词还有 bed, class, table, town 等。如：

The family were at table when he arrived. 当他到来时,他的家人正在吃饭。

Why not remove the table? It's in the way. 为什么不把桌子搬走?它挡住路了。



真题再现

() 1. (咸宁)—How about _____ talent show?

—I should say it was _____ great success.

- A. / ; the B. a ; the
C. the ; a D. the ; /

【解析】C。第一空:说话双方都知道的才艺表演,用定冠词 the;第二空:数量有“一”的意思,但又没有 one 强烈,一次巨大的成功,考查不定冠词 a 的用法。

() 2. (镇江)We'd better get ready for the dinner now because _____ Greens are coming to visit us tonight.

- A. a B. an
C. the D. /

【解析】C。定冠词 the 用在姓氏前面表示“一家或夫妇”。句意为“我们最好现在就准备吃晚餐,因为格林夫妇今晚要来我们家做客”。故选择 C。

() 3. (宜昌)—Where may you advise me to start my business?

—In my opinion, Yichang is _____ one of _____ best places for you.

- A. the, the B. /, the
C. the, / D. /, /

【解析】B。名词前有限定词时,不用冠词,one of 是限定词,可排除 A 和 C。形容词最高级前应加定冠词,所以答案选 B。

() 4. (河北)Cindy is _____ amazing sing-

er. She has lots of fans.

- A. a B. an
C. the D. 不填

【解析】B。amazing 的首字母发音为元音,应用不定冠词 an。故选 B。

() 5. (铜仁)—Have you found _____ address that you wanted?

—Yes. It's Mr Wang268@163. com.

- A. a B. an
C. the D. 不填

【解析】C。题中 address 是特指想要找的那一个,而不是泛指,应使用定冠词 the。

() 6. (苏州)We can have _____ bluer sky if we create _____ less polluted world.

- A. a ; a B. a ; the
C. the ; a D. the ; the

【解析】A。句意为“如果我们创造一个少污染的世界,我们可以有一个更蓝得天空”。a 用于辅音音素前,the 特指。故选 A。

() 7. (滨州)—You've dropped _____ “s” in the word “necessary”.

—Oh, _____ letter “s” is doubled.

- A. a ; a B. a ; the
C. an ; the D. the ; the

【解析】C。字母 s 的音标是 /es/, 是以元音音素开头的,而且表“一”,故该用冠词 an;上文已经提到的,下文再提到用定冠词 the,表示特指,故选 C。

() 8. (内江)Jenny is _____ American.

She works in _____ company in China now.

- A. an; a B. an; the
C. a; an

【解析】A. 第一空处表示泛指, 应该用不定冠词, American 是以元音音素开头的单词, 应该用不定冠词 an, 故排除 C; company 是以辅音音素开头的单词, 应该用不定冠词 a 表“一”, 因

此答案为 A。

() 9. (义乌) —Mike, could you come and give me _____ hand?

—OK, Mum. I'm coming now.

- A. a B. an
C. the D. 不填

【解析】A. give me a hand 是固定短语, 给我帮助。



实战模拟

一、填空

用适当的冠词填空, 不需要用冠词的地方填“/”。

- Tomorrow is _____ Christmas Day and my father and I went to choose _____ Christmas tree today.
- _____ Changjiang River is _____ longest river in _____ China.
- _____ Turners are living at the end of _____ Turner Street.
- Are you going to do it _____ second time?
- They went to _____ People's Park, but we both went to _____ People's Cinema yesterday.
- Washington is _____ capital of _____ USA.
- He joined the army in _____ spring of _____ 1995.
- _____ day of _____ December 20, 1999 is Monday.
- _____ old man is _____ teacher. He likes playing _____ basketball after _____ supper.
- Are _____ sheep kept by _____ farmers for producing _____ wool and _____ meat?
- I often watch _____ TV in _____ evening.
- What does this _____ word mean,

Father?

- What _____ important news!
- After _____ quick breakfast, I hurried to school.
- _____ sun rises in _____ east.

二、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. More college graduates would like to work in _____ west part of our country _____ next year.
A. the; the B. /; /
C. /; the D. the; /
- () 2. —Which girl is your daughter, Mr White?
—Oh, look, that little one in _____ red.
A. a B. an
C. / D. the
- () 3. His father is _____ engineer. He always wears _____ uniform at work.
A. a; a B. a; an
C. an; a D. an; an
- () 4. _____ teacher said that Jack was _____ new student and he was _____ honest.
A. The; a; / B. A; the; a
C. A; a; an D. The; a; an
- () 5. The scientists from _____ United States live in _____ Ninth Street.



- A. the; the D. /; the
C. /; / D. the; /
- () 6. We can't see _____ sun at _____ night.
A. the; the B. the; /
C. a; / D. /; /
- () 7. Before I go to _____ bed, I'd like to have _____ cup of tea.
A. the; a B. a; a
C. /; / D. /; a
- () 8. Mary's brother hit Tom on _____ nose.
A. the B. his
C. / D. her
- () 9. —Did you ride _____ bike to school this morning?
—No, I went to school by _____ bus.
A. /; the B. the; /
C. a; the D. a; /
- () 10. The bus driver always sits in _____ front of the bus.
A. a B. the
C. / D. an
- () 11. _____ article on our school will be sent to our headmaster.
A. The B. An
C. A D. /
- () 12. _____ Browns are sitting at _____ table, having breakfast.
A. /; a B. The; /
C. The; the D. /; the
- () 13. We saw _____ streets were covered

with _____ snow.

- A. the; / B. /; the
C. the; the D. /; /
- () 14. _____ students of this school watch TV news every evening.
A. The; / B. /; the
C. /; / D. The; the
- () 15. He is _____ Arab. He's speaking English with _____ smile.
A. an; /; a B. a; /; a
C. /; a; a D. an; an; a

三、完成句子

根据所给汉语的内容, 用英语完成下列句子。(每空一词)

- 我叔叔生病住院了, 我现在要去医院看他。
My uncle is ill _____. I am going to _____ to see him.
- 房子前面有辆红色的汽车。
There is _____ car _____ the house.
- 史密斯一家外出度假了。
_____ are out on holiday.
- 作为一个老师汤姆是很成功的, 但作为一个父亲他是失败的。
Tom is _____ as _____, but he is _____ as a father.
- 床上的这本书是一本很有用的书。
The book on _____ is _____ useful one.

第3章 动词与动词词组

动词是中考中出现频率最高的词汇,占35%左右,主要通过单项选择、完形填空、短文填空、完成句子、写作等题型来考查。根据对中考试题的分析可知,动词与动词词组是重点考查点之一。其考查重点为:(1)动词的基本形式:①现在式②过去式③过去分词④-ing形式;(2)行为动词的及物性和不及物性;(3)连系动词 be, get, look, seem, turn, grow, become 等;(4)助动词 be, do, have, shall, will 等;(5)情态动词 can, may, must, ought, need, dare 等;(6)动词和动词词组辨析。(7)常用动词与名词、副词、介词构成的短语动词的基本含义和引申义。



考点透视

考点1 一般现在时第三人称单数的构成规则

规则	动词原形	第三人称单数形式
一般情况加-s	read work	reads works
以 o, s, x, sh, ch 等结尾时加-es	go teach push pass	goes teaches pushes passes
以 y 结尾, y 前是元音的, 加-s; y 前是辅音的, 变 y 为 i 再加-es	study lay	studies lays

特别记忆 have 的第三人称单数为 has。

考点2 动词过去式、过去分词的构成

(1) 规则动词过去式、过去分词的构成。

规则	原形	过去式	过去分词
一般在词尾加-ed	ask want	asked wanted	asked wanted
以不发音的 e 结尾的加-d	close live	closed lived	closed lived
词尾为“辅音字母+y”的, 变 y 为 i 再加-ed	marry cry	married cried	married cried

续表

规则	原形	过去式	过去分词
以重读闭音节结尾,且词尾只有一个辅音字母的,则双写这个辅音字母后再加-ed	beg stop plan drop	begged stopped planned dropped	begged stopped planned dropped

(2)不规则动词变化见本书《附录》

考点3 现在分词(动名词)的构成规则

规则	原形	现在分词(动名词)
一般在词尾加-ing	stand catch	standing catching
以不发音的字母 e 结尾的动词,去 e 加-ing	write come	writing coming
以重读闭音节或-r 音节结尾,末尾又只有一个辅音字母(x 除外)的动词,将末尾辅音字母双写再加-ing	prefer hit stop run	preferring hitting stopping running
少数以-ie 结尾的动词,把 ie 变成 y 再加-ing	die lie	dying lying
以 oe,ee,ye 结尾的动词,直接加-ing	see	seeing

考点4 及物动词后接宾语的情况

(1)接动名词(不接不定式)作宾语的常用及物动词:

advise 建议;allow 允许;consider 考虑;dislike 不喜欢;enjoy 喜爱;finish 完成;imagine 想象;keep 保持;mind 介意;miss 错过;practise 练习;risk 冒险;stop 停止;suggest 建议;understand 理解;give up 放弃。如:

After we had finished digging the ground,we put in the cabbages. 我们掘好地以后,种上了卷心菜。

Everyone enjoyed walking home,except John. 每人都高高兴兴地走着回家,而约翰除外。

You mustn't give up studying foreign languages for even a day. 你们学习外语一天也不要中断。

(2)接不定式(不接动名词)作宾语的常用动词:

afford 负担,买得起;agree 同意;ask 要求,让;beg 请求,恳求;choose 选择;decide 决定;expect 期待;help 帮助;hope 希望;learn 学习;plan 计划;prepare 准备;pretend 假装;promise 许诺;refuse 拒绝;want 想要;wish 希望;manage 设法。如:

I decided to go shopping with my mother tomorrow. 我决定明天跟我妈去购物。

He expected to finish the work by March. 他预期三月份完成这项工作。

(3)接不定式或动名词作宾语的意思相近的常用动词:

like 喜欢;hate 恨;love 喜爱;prefer 宁可;begin 开始;start 开始;continue 继续。如:

We begin to study shorthand today. 我们今天开始学习速记。

We continued to drive on even though it was difficult. 虽然路很难行,我们仍继续前进。

(4) 接不定式或动名词作宾语的意思不同的常用动词:

forget to do sth. 表示“忘记要做某事”,强调事情还未做	forget doing sth. 表示“忘记做过某事”,强调事情已经做了
remember to do sth. 记得要做某事	remember doing sth. 记得做了某事
try to do sth. 尽力做某事	try doing sth. 尝试做某事
mean to do sth. 打算做某事	mean doing sth. 意味着
stop to do sth. 停下来做某事	stop doing sth. 停止做某事
be used to do sth. 被用来做某事	be used to doing sth. 习惯做某事
regret to do sth. 遗憾要做某事	regret doing sth. 后悔做了某事
go on to do 继续做另一件事	go on doing 继续做同一件事

(5) 可接双宾语的常用动词。

① 双宾语易位时需借助介词 to 的常用动词:

award 授予; bring 带给; hand 递给; lend 借出; mail 邮寄; offer 提供; pass 递; pay 付给; post 寄给; read 读; return 归还; send 送; serve 招待; show 展示; take 拿走; teach 教; tell 告诉; write 写。如:

Certainly, keeping a pet will bring us some troubles. = Certainly, keeping a pet will bring some troubles to us. 当然,养宠物会给我们带来一些麻烦。

She lent her daughter the company car. = She lent the company car to her daughter. 她把公司的车借给了她女儿。

② 双宾语易位时需借助介词 for 的常用动词:

book 预订; buy 买; choose 选择; cook 煮; draw 画; fetch 去取; find 找到; fix 安装; get 取得; make 制作; order 订购; pick 采摘; prepare 准备; save 节省; sing 唱; steal 偷。如:

I bought my son a portable typewriter. = I bought a portable typewriter for my son. 我给儿子买了一台手提式打字机。

When we arrived home, mother had already prepared us dinner. = When we arrived home, mother had already prepared dinner for us. 当我们到家时,母亲已为我们准备好了晚餐。

考点5 不及物动词的用法

意思已完整的动词为不及物动词,后面不能跟宾语。如:

I sat as quiet as a mouse and listened to his story. 我静悄悄地坐着,听他讲故事。

I put through a long-distance call to a friend in Fuzhou this morning. 我今天上午给在福州的一个朋友打了一个长途电话。

考点6 系动词的分类

(1) 表示状态的系动词 be。在不同的主语后面和不同的时态中 be 动词有不同的形式。

人称	单数				复数			
	主语	现在式	缩写	过去式	主语	现在式	缩写	过去式
第一人称	I	am	I'm	was	we	are	we're	were
第二人称	you	are	you're	were	you	are	you're	were
第三人称	he	is	he's	was	they	are	they're	were
	she		she's					
	it		it's					

(2)表示“感觉”的系动词,如 look(看起来),feel(觉得,摸起来),smell(闻起来),sound(听起来),taste(尝起来)等。如:

I shut my eyes. It felt good lying on the ground. 我闭上眼睛。躺在地上感到很舒适。

Your experience sounds interesting. 你的经历听起来很有趣。

They tasted delicious. 它们尝起来很美味。

(3)表示动作或变化,由行为动词转化而来的系动词,一般在这些系动词后跟形容词作表语,常见的有 become,get,grow,turn,go,都意为“变,变得”。如:

My father came so late that his dinner got cold;my mother had to warm it up. 父亲回来太晚了,饭都凉了,母亲不得不把它再热一下。

She feels sick. Her face turns white. 她感到不舒服,她的脸色变得苍白。

The weather gets warmer and the days get longer when spring comes. 春天来了,天气变得暖和了,白天也变得长了。

(4)表示“像”的系动词,用来表示“看起来像”的意思,主要有 seem,appear,look 等。如:

You look tired. Why? What time did you get up? 你看起来很疲倦,怎么了? 你什么时候起床的?

She seems (to get) sad while I feel better. 她似乎陷入沮丧而我觉得好点了。

考点7 系动词的用法

(1)系动词通常不用于被动语态和进行时态中,但是表示变化的系动词如 get,become,grow,turn,go 等可用于进行时态表示逐渐变化的过程。

(2)在一般情况下,系动词主要跟形容词或分词作表语。如:

Be careful when you cross this very busy street. If not,you may get run over by a car. 当你穿过繁忙的街道时小心点,否则的话,你就可能被车撞上。

(3)常见的能跟名词作表语的系动词有 be,become,appear,seem,prove,remain 和 turn 等。如:

The population growth in China remains a problem. 中国的人口增长还是个问题。

特别记忆 turn 后跟(表示主语身份的)名词作表语时,不加冠词;而 become 则要加冠词。如:

Twenty years later,he turned teacher/became a teacher. 20年后,他成了一名老师。

(4)系动词也可跟不定式 to do/to be,常见的有 appear,seem,remain,prove,look 等。如:

Having a trip abroad is certainly good for the old couple,but it remains to be seen whether they will enjoy it. 去国外旅行当然对老夫妇有好处,但他们是否喜欢还有待于观察。

On the long journey,Peter proved to be a most interesting guide. We all had a wonderful time. 在漫长的旅途中,皮特证明了自己是一个很有趣的导游。我们都过得很愉快。

考点 8 各种助动词的具体使用情况

(1) 助动词 do(does, did)

① 构成一般疑问句。如:

Does she inform you when they will hold a meeting? 她通知你他们什么时候要开会吗?

Do you want a single or a return ticket? 你要单程票还是往返票?

② do(does, did) + not 构成否定句。如:

Although he ran up against many difficulties, he did not lose heart. 虽然他碰到了许多困难,但他并不气馁。

We do not know the value of health till we lose it. 失去健康才知道健康的可贵。

③ 构成否定祈使句。注意只用 do, 不用 does 和 did。如:

Do not keep asking me! 别老是来问我!

Do not touch the exhibits. 请勿触摸展品。

④ 放在动词前, 加强语气。如:

I do remember the story. 我的确记得这故事。

I did go there. 我确实去那儿了。

⑤ 用于倒装句。如:

Never did he break his promise. 他从不食言。

Only when he read the newspaper did he know the story. 他看了报纸后才知道那则报道。

⑥ 用来代替动词。如:

—Do you like singing? 你喜欢唱歌吗?

—Yes, I do. 是的, 喜欢。(do 代替 like singing)

He comes from Norway, doesn't he? 他是从挪威来的, 对吗?

(2) 助动词 be

① be + 现在分词, 构成进行时态。如:

One day while he was teaching, he suddenly fell onto his desk. 那天他正在讲着课, 突然扑倒在讲台上。

We are listening to a report. 我们正在听报告。

② be + 过去分词, 构成被动语态。如:

The cup fell and was broken into pieces. 茶杯掉下去, 摔成碎片。

The boy was given an apple. 有人给了那男孩一个苹果。

(3) 助动词 have (has, had)

① have(has) + 过去分词, 构成现在完成时态。如:

How much have you borrowed from him? 你向他借了多少钱?

He has read many books on the subject. 他看过许多关于这一主题的书。

② have(has) + been + 现在分词, 构成现在完成进行时态。如:

I have been reading Mark Twain's works this week. 本周我一直在读马克·吐温的作品。

③ had + 过去分词, 构成过去完成时态。如:

The teacher had just left the room when the boy started to make noise. 老师刚离开教室那个男孩便开始吵闹起来。



④have (had)+been+过去分词,构成完成时的被动语态。如:

They have been beaten by an outstanding team. 他们已被一个优秀的球队击败。

The problem had been solved by the end of last month. 问题在上月末解决了。

(4)助动词 shall 和 will

“shall/will+动词原形”表示一般将来时。shall 用于第一人称,will 用于各种人称。如:

When I see her, I shall give her your message. 我见到她就把你的口信带给她。

We shall have a sports meeting next month. 我们下月要开运动会。

He will come here next week. 他将在下周来访。

(5)助动词 should 和 would

“should/would+动词原形”,表示过去将来时。should 用于第一人称,would 用于各种人称。如:

I telephoned my mother to ask what I should do the next day. 我打了电话给我妈妈问她我第二天做什么。

I wanted to ask how I should send out the invites. 我想来请教应该怎样发出邀请。

We wanted to know when he would finish the article. 我们想知道他什么时候写完这篇文章。

考点9 情态动词的基本用法

(1)can/could

①表示能力,意为“可以,能够”,过去式为 could。如:

They can't swim well. 他们不太会游泳。

He couldn't speak well until he was four years old. 他直到四岁才能流利地说话。

②表示允许,意为“许可,准许”。如:

Can I have a card with the hotel's address? 是否可以给我一张有旅馆地址的名片?

Could we stop playing cards? I feel like having a rest. 可以不打牌了吗? 我想休息一会儿。

③表示客观的可能性。could 既可以表示过去的可能性,也可以表示现在的可能性,比 can 的程度要弱,在否定句、疑问句中表示推测或怀疑。如:

How can that be true? I can't believe my eyes. 那怎么可能是真的? 我不敢相信我的眼睛。

Jack can't be a professor. 杰克不可能是教授。

It couldn't be my friend. He hasn't come back. 不可能是我朋友,他还没回来。

(2)may/might

①表示允许,意为“可以”,might 语气更委婉。如:

—May I ask you a question? 我可以问你一个问题吗?

—Certainly! 当然可以。

May/Might I call in this evening? 我可以在今天晚上去拜访您吗?

He asked if he might use the phone. 他问是否可以用一下电话。

②表示推测,意为“可能”。might 可作 may 的过去式,也可以替代 may,说明现在的情况,语气比 may 更委婉些。如:

Jim may go to dance tonight. 吉姆今晚可能去跳舞。

She might have forgotten the meeting. 她可能已经忘记开会的事了。

③may 置于句首,表示祝愿。

May you have a happy life! 祝你生活幸福!

May you all succeed in whatever you do! 祝你万事如意!

(3) must/have to

①表示“必须,一定要”,但 must 强调说话者的主观看法,have to 强调客观需要。have to 有人称、数和时态的变化,而 must 没有变化。如:

We must agree to the arrangements for this. 我们必须认可为此所做的安排。

He hardly knew how to write, yet he had to stop learning. 他几乎还没学会写字,就得停止学习了。

He will have to answer for his wrong doing one day. 他终有一天要为他所犯的错负责。

②must 的否定形式 mustn't,意为“不得,不准,禁止”;have to 的否定形式 don't have to,意为“不必”。如:

The doctor said he mustn't lift heavy weights. 医生说他切不可提重物。

If you're right, he mustn't be allowed to escape. 如果你说得对,千万不能让他逃走。

She does not have to work on Saturday. 她星期六不需要工作。

③must 表示有把握的推测,意为“一定,准是”,用在肯定句,这时不能用 have to 代替 must;在否定句或疑问句中,要代之以 can't 和 can 表示的推测。如:

You must be tired after a long journey. 你走了这么远的路,一定很累。

Your father must be a painter. 你爸爸一定是个画家。

He can't be a physicist. 他不可能是物理学家。

What do you think this letter can mean? 你认为这封信可能意味着什么?

(4) shall

①一般用于第一人称,表示征求对方的意见或请求对方许可。如:

Shall I come over and talk about it with you now? 我是不是现在过去就此事和你谈谈?

When shall we play a basketball match? 我们什么时候打一场篮球赛呢?

②用于第二、第三人称的陈述句中,表示说话人给对方的命令、警告、允许或威胁。如:

If you work hard, you shall have a holiday on Saturday. 如果你努力工作,你星期六可以休假。

He shall stay in bed. 他必须躺在床上。

(5) should

①常用于表示劝告或建议,意为“应该”。如:

Maybe you should ask your father for a ride. 也许你应该让你爸爸顺便开车送你去。

I think you should exercise more. 我认为你应该多运动。

②表示推测,意为“想必一定,按理应该”。如:

They should be there by now, I think. 我想现在他们该到那儿了。

(6) will/would

①表示请求、建议、邀请等,一般用于疑问句,常用第二人称作主语;would 比 will 更客气、委婉。如:

Excuse me, would you tell me where I can get some butter? 打扰一下,您能告诉我黄油在哪儿买吗?

Will you lend me some money? 你能借我一点钱吗?



②表示意愿、决心、愿望等。Would表示过去的情况。

—Can someone help me? 有人能帮一下忙吗?

—I will. 我来帮你。

Don't worry about us. We won't miss anything. 用不着担心,我们什么也不会错过的。

③习惯表达“would like to+动词原形”意为“想要做……”;“Would you mind+动名词”意为“你介意……吗?”如:

I would like to express my thanks for all that you have done. 我想对你所做的一切表示我的感谢。

Would you mind doing me a little favour? 你能否帮我一个忙?

(7) ought to/need/used to/dare

①ought to表示“应该”,否定形式为ought not to或oughtn't to,其一般疑问句形式是将ought置于主语前。如:

I think we ought to keep the truth from him until he's better. 我想等他好些再把实情告诉他。

Human oughtn't to pollute nature. 人类不应污染大自然。

Ought we to show ourselves at the party? 我们该出席这个宴会吗?

②need表示“有必要”,need作情态动词时,常用于否定句或疑问句中。以need开头的问句,肯定回答用must,否定回答用needn't。如:

We need not answer all these questions. 我们不必回答所有这些问题。

—Need John come to the school? 约翰有必要来学校吗?

—Yes, he must. /—No, he needn't. 是的。/不,没必要。

③used to表示“过去常常,过去是”,没有人称和数的变化,其否定形式为usedn't to或didn't use to,其疑问句形式是将used提到主语前或用Did... use to? 如:

I used to go to work by underground when I was in London. 我在伦敦时,通常乘地铁上班。

I didn't use to like opera, but now I'm getting interested. 我过去不喜欢歌剧,但是现在慢慢地感兴趣了。

Did you use to live in Shanghai? 你们以前住在上海吗?

④dare表示“敢,有胆量”,多用于否定、疑问或条件句中,其否定形式为dare not,疑问句形式是把dare直接提至主语前。如:

Nothing is hard in this world if you dare to scale the heights. 世上无难事,只要肯登攀。

You dare not arouse my displeasure. 你不敢惹我不高兴。

How dare you say that? 你竟敢那样说?

考点 10 情态动词的其他搭配及用法

(1)对于may引导的疑问句的回答有以下几种。如:

—May I come in? 我可以进来吗?

—Yes, please. 可以。/ Yes, you may. 可以。/ No, you mustn't. 不,千万别。/ No, you had better not. 不,你最好不要。

(2)表示“必须”时,含must的问句,其肯定回答仍然用must,否定回答则用needn't或don't have to。如:

—Must we water the tomato fields, too? 我们还得浇西红柿地吗?

—Yes, you must. 是的, 必须。 / No, you needn't/don't have to. 不, 不必了。

(3) have to 和 have got to 都可表示“不得不”, 在表示一次性动作时可互换, 但有下列区别。

①表示习惯性动作时, 尤其句中含有 always, often, sometimes 等时, 用 have to。如:

Usually we don't have to work on weekends. 在周末我们通常不必工作。

②have to 之前可加情态动词或助动词, 但 have got to 不能。如:

It is a pity that we shall have to leave tomorrow. 我们明天必须离开, 真是遗憾。

We shall have to go through customs at the airport. 我们必须在机场办理海关手续。

③have to 的否定形式为 don't have to, 而 have got to 的否定形式为 haven't got to; 前者的疑问句形式借助于 do, 而后者直接将 have 提前。如:

After liberation we don't have to worry about making a living. 新中国成立后我们不必为生活发愁了。

You haven't got to take flowers but many people do. 你不必非带花去不可, 但是许多人都带着花去。

(4) will 还可表示规律性的“注定会”。如:

You will fail if you don't work hard. 不努力注定要失败。

Man will die without air. 没有空气, 人无法生存。

(5) need 还可以作实义动词, 意为“需要”, 有人称和数的变化, 后接名词、动名词(表示被动)或带 to 的不定式。如:

This shoe needs repairing. 这鞋需要修补。

—Do you need to see him today? 你需要今天见他吗?

—Yes, I need to. 是的。 / No, I don't need to. 不必。

(6) dare 用作实义动词, 后接动词不定式, 其否定句、疑问句的构成同其他动词一样, 借助于助动词 do 构成。在一般情况下, dare 后可接带 to 的或不带 to 的动词不定式, 在 daren't 后只能接不带 to 的不定式(此时, daren't 可视为情态动词)。如:

He does not dare to jump from the top of the wall. 他不敢从墙头跳下来。

My younger sister dare not go out alone. 我的妹妹不敢自己出去。

考点 11 常见动词短语速记

动词+about	care about 关心, 在乎 think about 思考 hear about 听说	talk about 谈论 worry about 为……担心
动词+at	look at 看, 注视 shout at 冲(某人)嚷嚷 work at 干……活动(研究)	call at 拜访(接地点) laugh at 嘲笑 point at 指向
动词+away	die away 逐渐消失 throw away 扔掉 wash away 冲走	take away 拿走 put away 收拾起来, 存起来



续表

动词+back	hold back 控制住	give back 归还
动词+down	break down 坏了,分解 cut down 削减,砍倒	take down 记下,记录 turn down 调小
动词+from	learn from 向……学习 keep/stop/prevent...from 阻止……做	die from 因……而死 hear from 收到……来信
动词+for	ask for 请求 long for 渴望	look for 寻找 wait for 等候
动词+in	give in 让步 join in 参加 drop in 拜访	break in 强制进入;插话 hand in 上交 get in 收获;进入
动词+into	divide...into 把……分成 get into 进入;陷入	put/translate...into 把……译成 turn into 变成
动词+of	dream of 梦到;渴望 think of 想到	die of 死于 hear of 听说
动词+off	see...off 送行 get off 下车	put off 延期 take off 脱下,起飞
动词+on	call on 拜访 depend on 依靠 put on 穿上;戴上;上演 turn on/switch on 打开 carry on 继续;进行	hold on 等一等(别挂电话) live on 以……为生 move on 继续移动,往前走 try on 试穿
动词+out	give out 散发;用完 go out 熄灭 find out 查出;弄明白 run out 用完 put out 扑灭 carry out 执行 hand out 散发;分发	help out 救助 look out 当心,提防 set out 出发,着手 speak out 大胆讲出 point out 指出 work out 算出;想出办法
动词+over	think over 仔细考虑 go over 复习	look over 翻阅;检查 turn over 翻到
动词+through	get through 通过;接通电话	look through 翻阅;看一遍;仔细查看

续表

动词+to	agree to 同意 point to 指向 attend to 专心;注意;照顾	belong to 属于 get to 到达 turn to 向……求助;查阅
动词+up	build up 建立 get up 起床;站起 hurry up 赶快 come up 上来;长出;出现 look up 查找;找出 clear up 整理;收拾 turn up 开大(音量等);出席;出现 give up 放弃;献出	set up 架起;建立 cut up 切碎 wake up 醒来 speed up 加快速度 ring up 打电话 keep up 保持;维持;继续 bring up 抚养;呕吐;提出 put up 搭起;架起;安装;住宿
动词+with	deal with 处理,对付 cover... with 用……覆盖 meet with 遇到,遭受 play with 玩,玩弄	agree with 同意 begin with 以……开始 talk with 同……交谈
三个或三个以上的 词构成的动词短语	look forward to 盼望 take notice of 注意 take a photo of 拍……照片 keep in touch with 保持联系 make room for 给……腾空间 take part in 参观 catch up with 赶上 go on with 继续 get close to 接近 pay attention to 注意 pay a visit to 访问 make use of 利用 make a fool of 愚弄 keep up with 赶上 get on (along) with 和……相处	take hold of 握住 do well in 在……做得好 make fun of 开玩笑,取笑 get rid of 摆脱 help oneself to 随便吃(用) make friends with 与……交朋友 keep away from 避开;别靠近 play a part in 起作用;扮演角色 take care of 照看 run out of 用完 set fire to 放火烧 lose sight of 看不见 take the place of 取代 get used to 习惯于 catch sight of 看见



真题再现

- () 1. (广东) You should really _____ smoking. It's a terrible habit.
A. grow up B. pick up
C. give up D. set up

【解析】C。grow up 成长,长大;pick up 捡

起,拾起;give up 放弃;set up 建立,创建。根据题意“你应该戒烟”。故选 C。

- () 2. (常州) —Please _____ the tigers.
It's dangerous to take photos with them.



—Oh, I see. Thank you.

- A. keep off B. take off
C. get off D. turn off

【解析】A. keep off 远离, take off 起飞脱下, get off 下车, turn off 关闭, 根据题意“请远离老虎, 与它们照相那是危险的”, 故 A。

() 3. (宿迁) This piece of music _____ beautiful.

- A. looks B. sounds
C. tastes D. smells

【解析】B. music 音乐是听的, 故选 B。

() 4. (江西)—Do you know the way to the post office?

—Yes. Follow me and I'll _____ you.

- A. call B. pick
C. show D. invite

【解析】C. 根据题意, 请跟着我走, 我将指给你看。故选 C。

() 5. (巴中) The child nearly _____ all his pocket money.

- A. ran out of B. kept out of
C. got out of

【解析】A. run out of 用光, keep out of 使……远离, get out of 从……里出来。根据题意可知选 A。

() 6. (眉山) I feel it hard to keep up with my classmates in study and sometimes I lose heart. But whenever I want to _____, my teacher always encourages me to work harder.

- A. go on B. run away
C. give up D. look out

【解析】C. go on 继续, give up 放弃, run away 逃跑, give up 还回。根据题意“每次当我想放弃的时候, 我的老师总是鼓励我更努力”可知选 C。

() 7. (杭州) Eton College in England was _____ in 1440 by King Henry VI to give free education to poor students.

- A. cleaned up B. set up
C. fixed up D. cheered up

【解析】B. clean up 打扫, set up 创建, fix up 修理, cheer up 欢呼, 根据题意选 B。

() 8. (安徽)—What will the weather be like tomorrow?

—It _____ be rainy, cloudy or sunny.

Who knows?

- A. must B. might
C. shall D. should

【解析】B. 上句问: 明天的天气怎么样? 下句答语中有 or 连接三种可能, 尤其是最后的“谁知道呢?” 因此三者都有可能, 表可能性最小的情态动词是正确的。

() 9. (咸宁)—Wow! You look different!

You _____ wear glasses.

—Yes, I did. But now I am wearing contact lenses (隐形眼镜).

- A. could B. must
C. used to D. would

【解析】C. 由现在戴隐形眼镜, 看起来不一样可知是和过去形成对比。表示“过去常常且现在不做了”用 used to do sth., 所以选择答案 C。

() 10. (铜仁)—This pair of shoes _____

belong to Jack. He likes this kind very much.

—It _____ be his. It's too large for him.

- A. can; can't
B. may; needn't
C. must; mustn't
D. must; can't

【解析】D. 对事物进行猜测, 表示“肯定、必定”用 must。表示“肯定不、不可能”用 can't。

() 11. (苏州)—I don't care what my teachers think.

—Well, you _____.

- A. could B. would
C. should D. might

【解析】C。句意：—我不在乎老师怎么认为。—你应该在乎。should 在本句中表示劝告或建议，意为“应该”。故选 C。

() 12. (广州) It doesn't look like rain, so you _____ bring your umbrella with you.

- A. shouldn't B. mustn't
C. can't D. needn't

【解析】D。本题题意为“看起来不会下雨，所以你不需带雨伞。”，shouldn't 意为“不应该”；mustn't 意为“禁止，不允许”；can't 意为“不

能够”；needn't 意为“不需要”，由题意及解析可知答案为 D。

() 13. (连云港)—_____ I have a ticket, please?

- Sorry, sir. All the tickets were sold out ten minutes ago.
A. May B. Need
C. Must D. Should

【解析】A。may 表示“可以”；need 表示“需要”；must 表示“必须”；should 表示“应当”，根据题意，答案应选 A。



实战模拟

一、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. The teacher told the boys _____ in the street.
A. not play B. not to play
C. don't play D. don't to play
- () 2. —What a beautiful watch! Is it new?
—No, I have _____ it for 2 years.
A. had B. sold
C. borrowed D. bought
- () 3. To everyone's surprise, Alex _____ play chess very well when he was only four.
A. might B. should
C. would D. could
- () 4. They had to _____ the 800-metre race because of the bad weather.
A. put on B. put off
C. get on D. get up
- () 5. It's _____ rather cold. I shall put my jacket on.
A. starting B. looking
C. getting D. feeling
- () 6. —Listen! James is talking in the office.
—It _____ be James. He has gone to Canada.
A. may not B. needn't

- C. can't D. mustn't

() 7. —Hello, Mike. Long time no see. Where are you?

—Oh, not only my father but also I _____ Wuhan for a month.

- A. have gone to B. have been to
C. has been in D. have been in

() 8. Taiwan is part of China. We _____ the same history and culture.

- A. explain B. express
C. connect D. share

() 9. Last week when she walked _____ the lake, she saw someone _____ in it.

- A. passed; swim
B. passed; swimming
C. past; swim
D. past; swimming

() 10. —Do you have any problems if you _____ this job?

—Well, I'm thinking about the working day.

- A. offer B. will offer
C. are offered D. will be offered

() 11. Usually John _____ to school in his father's beautiful car.

- A. has taken B. is taking
C. is taken D. has been taken

- () 12. —May we leave the classroom now?
 —No, you _____. You _____ to
 leave until the bell rings.
- A. mustn't; are allowed
 B. don't have to; are supposed
 C. needn't; aren't allowed
 D. can't; aren't supposed

二、根据汉语意思完成下列句子, 每空一词

- 听到那悲伤的消息, 他忍不住哭了。
 He couldn't _____ when he
 heard the sad news.
- 当我到达火车站的时候火车已经开走了。
 The train _____ when I got to
 the train station.
- 如果每个人都能为保护环境作出自己的贡
 献, 这个世界将会变得更加美好。
 The world will become much more beautiful if
 everyone _____ a contribution to _____
 the environment.
- 许多学生认为应该允许青少年选择自己的服装。
 Many students think that teenagers _____

_____ to choose their own
 clothes.

- 我们大部分人都知道纸是用什么做的。
 Most of us know what paper _____
 _____.
- 让我们到乡村去帮助孩子们学习。
 _____ go to the countryside _____
 _____ the kids _____ their study.
- 听说他的父亲已经死了五年了, 我感到很难过。
 I'm sorry to hear that his father _____
 _____ for five years.
- 他问我第二天是否去看电影。
 He asked me if I _____
 the cinema the next day.
- 尽管我学习不好, 但我从未放弃。
 Though I didn't do well in my lessons, I never
 _____.
- 据说已经有许多婴儿因奶粉中的三聚氰胺
 而死。
 It _____ that many babies have
 died from melamine in milk powder.

第4章 形容词与副词

近几年在中考试题中除考查在特定语境下形容词、副词的使用外,形容词、副词的原级、比较级、最高级以及由它们构成的固定结构都是常见的考点,副词的句法功能及其意义也是考点。考查形容词、副词的最常见题型有单项选择、单词拼写、句型转换以及翻译句子等。



考点透视

考点1 形容词作定语需要后置的情况

(1)修饰 something, nothing, anything, everything 等不定代词时,通常放在被修饰词的后面。如:

I have something important to tell you. 我有重要的事情要告诉你。

(2)表示长、宽、高、深及年龄的形容词,应放在相应的名词后。如:

The street is 20 metres wide. 这条街宽 20 米。

The boy is twelve years old. 这个男孩 12 岁。

上述例子也可以这样表达: a 35-metre-wide street, a 12-year-old boy 等。

(3)else 只能作后置定语,修饰疑问代词 what, who, whom, whose 和不定代词 something, anything, nothing, somebody, anybody, nobody 等。如:

Is there anything else we need to do? 我们还需要做什么吗?

If I could not persuade him, no one else could. 如果我不能说服他,那就没有人能够说服他。

(4)present 作后置定语和作前置定语时意思不同。如:

the people present at the meeting 出席会议的人们; the present society 当今社会

考点2 只能作表语的形容词

afraid, alone, asleep, awake, alive, well, ill, frighten 等形容词在句中只能作表语,而不能作定语。

如: a sick boy(一个生病的男孩),而不说 an ill boy。如果 ill 作为前置形容词,它表示“邪恶的”意思,

如: an ill boy 是“一个邪恶的男孩”的意思。再如: a lonely man(一个孤独的人),不能说成 an alone man; a living person(活人),而不说 an alive person。

考点3 只能作定语的形容词

little, only, wooden, woolen, elder 等以及复合式的形容词,如: English-speaking(讲英语的), kind-hearted(心肠好的), man-made(人造的)等在句中只能作定语。如: a little child(一个小孩), a kind-hearted man(一个好心肠的人)。

考点4 作定语的形容词的排序

从左到右的顺序是: (1)描写性质的形容词(beautiful 等); (2)描写尺寸大小的形容词(small, large 等); (3)描写形状的形容词(long, short 等); (4)描写年龄的形容词(old, young 等); (5)描写颜色的形容词(white, black 等); (6)描写来源(如某国、某地)的形容词(Chinese, German 等); (7)表明制造材料的形容词(silk, cotton 等); (8)说明用途的动名词、名词或形容词(writing, waiting 等)。如:

a small round wooden table 一张小圆木桌; a dirty old red coat 一件又脏又旧的红色大衣



考点5 副词位置

表示不确切时间的副词和一些频度副词通常用在实义动词前面,情态动词、助动词和 be 动词的后面。如:

I am still waiting for a reply from him. 我还在等着他的答复。

I will never forget the day when I met him. 我永远不会忘记见到他的那一天。

考点6 比较等级规则变化

(1)单音节词在词尾加 -er, -est。如: fast—faster—fastest, long—longer—longest。

(2)以不发音 e 结尾的词,在词尾加 -r, -st。如: late—later—latest, nice—nicer—nicest。

(3)以“辅音字母+y”结尾的双音节词,改 y 为 i,再加 -er, -est。如: early—earlier—earliest, happy—happier—happiest。

(4)其他双音节词和多音节词,在前面加 more, most 来构成比较级和最高级。如: easily—more, easily—most easily, beautiful—more beautiful—most beautiful。

考点7 比较等级不规则变化

有少数形容词和副词的比较级和最高级是不规则的,必须熟记。如:

good/well—better—best

bad/badly—worse—worst

far—farther/further—farthest/furthest

many/much—more—most

little—less—least

few—fewer—fewest

考点8 原级比较

(1)“A+…+as+原级+as+B”表示 A、B 两者程度相同。如:

Bob is running as fast as John. 鲍勃和约翰跑得一样快。

He is as tall as you. 他与你一样高。

(2)“A+…+not+as/so+原级+as+B”表示“A 不如 B……”。如:

I don't go there as often as I used to. 我现在不像过去那么经常去那里了。

He is not as/so careful as he used to. 他不如过去仔细了。

考点9 比较级

(1)“A+…+比较级+than+B”表示“A 比 B……”。如:

He swims better than I do. 他游泳游得比我好。

He is taller than Tom. 他比汤姆高。

在比较级前用 much, even, still, a little, no 等词修饰,表示加强语气。在多音节形容词或以 -ing, -ive, -ful, -ed 等构成的形容词前,或者在形容词后加 -ly 等构成的副词前,用 more 来构成比较级形式。如:

She did her homework much more carefully than him. 她做家庭作业要比他仔细得多。

(2)“比较级+and+比较级”或“more and more+原级”表示“越来越……”。如:

Now Internet is developing faster and faster. 因特网现在发展得越来越快了。

The society is developing more and more rapidly. 社会发展得越来越快了。

(3)“A+…+比较级+than+any other+单数名词(+介词短语)”表示“A 比任何人或物都……”,有“A 是最……”的意思。如:

He is running faster than any other student in his class. 他跑得比班上其他人都快。

He works more diligently than any other people in his company. 他比公司的其他人都要更努力工作。

This book is more difficult than any other one here. 这本书比这里其他任何的都要难。

(4)“the+比较级,the+比较级”表示“越……,越……”。如:

The sooner you start, the sooner you will finish. 你开始得越早,就完成得越快。

考点 10 最高级

最高级表示三者或三者以上人或物中“最……”,其中形容词最高级前通常可加定冠词,副词则可不加。

(1)“主语+…+(the)+最高级+介词短语”表示“三者或三者以上的某一个最……”。如:

He sings (the) best in the class. 他在班里唱得最好。

She is the tallest of the three. 在三个人当中她是最高。

He works the hardest among the three boys. 在三个男孩中他工作最努力。

(2)“特殊疑问句+…+最高级+A,B or C”表示“三者或三者以上哪一个最……”。如:

Who can type fastest, Tom, Jack or Mary? 汤姆,杰克和玛丽,谁打字最快?

Which apple is the best, the first, the second or the third? 哪一个苹果最好,第一个,第二个还是第三个?

考点 11 形容词的常用句型

(1)“It is+形容词+for+sb.+不定式”表示“做某事对某人来说怎么样”。这种结构中的形容词常与事物的特征有关,常用的有:difficult, easy, hard, dangerous, safe, useful, pleasant, interesting, likely, possible, impossible, necessary, important 等。如:

It's hard for him to make a decision so quickly. 让他这么快做出决定太困难。

It is dangerous for a girl to go out alone at midnight. 一个女孩子深夜独自出去是危险的。

(2)“形容词+enough+to do…”表示“足够……做某事”。如:

The boy is strong enough to carry the heavy box. 这个男孩力气够大,能搬动这只箱子。

特别记忆 enough 作副词修饰形容词时,放在所修饰词的后面,句子可以用 so... that... 句型改写。如:例句可以改写为: The boy is so strong that he can carry the heavy box.

(3)“It is+形容词+of+sb.+不定式”表示“某人(做某事)怎么样”。这种结构中的形容词常与人的品质或性格特点有关,常用的有:good, kind, nice, polite, clever, foolish, lazy, careful, careless 等。如:

It is very nice of you to help me find my bike. 你帮我找到了自行车真是太好了。

It is clever of you to do that. 你那样做真聪明。

It was foolish of me to forget it. 我真蠢,把这事给忘了。

(4)“too+形容词+to do…”表示“太……而不能……”。如:

I was too excited to say a word. 我激动得一个字也说不出。

(5)表示感情和情绪的形容词:glad, happy, sorry, sad, thankful, pleased 等常接动词不定式作状语。如:

I'm really happy to hear from you. 我真的很高兴收到你的信。

Glad to see you. 见到你很高兴。

I'm very sad to hear the death of Mr Johnson. 听到约翰逊先生去世的消息,我非常难过。

(6)在 light, heavy, difficult, hard, easy, fit, dangerous, safe 等形容词后面,不用被动语态,但有被动意思或所接动词和句子的主语之间存在动宾关系。如:

The man is difficult to deal with. 这人很难相处。(deal with 与 the man 是动宾关系)

An apartment is so easy to keep. 公寓很容易照管。(keep 和 apartment 是动宾关系)

(7)表示能力和意志的形容词,如 ready, able, sure, certain 等后面,接动词不定式作状语。如:

He is certain(sure) to come here tomorrow. 他明天一定会来这里。

特别记忆 当主语是 it 时,后面往往用 certain 而不用 sure。如:

It is certain(不能用 sure) that he will come here tomorrow.



真题再现

() 1. (宿迁) It's nice _____ Andy _____ me with my English study.

- A. at; to help B. of; to help
C. with; help D. of; help

【解析】B。考查固定短语 It's + *adj.* of sb. + to do sth., 该句用来评价人的品质。句意: 安迪能帮我学英语, 她真好。

() 2. (广州) —Why don't you like winter in Beijing?

—Because it is _____ winter in Guangzhou.

- A. as cold as
B. much colder than
C. not so cold as
D. not colder than

【解析】B。根据句意可知他并不喜欢北京的冬天, 因为北京比广州冷。as cold as 意为“与广州一样冷”; not so cold as 意为“不及广州冷”, not colder than 意为“不比广州冷”, 均不合题意, 因此答案为 B。

() 3. (河北) Sometimes walking is even _____ than driving during the busy traffic time.

- A. fast B. faster
C. slow D. slower

【解析】B。由句中 than 可判断应用形容词的比较级, 可排除 A, C。又因为句意为“有时, 步行比在交通拥挤时开车要快”。故选 B。

() 4. (咸宁) —Health is money.

—But I think it is _____ money.

- A. as important as
B. more important than
C. so important than

D. the same as

【解析】B。句意是: 这里是两者比较就要用比较级, important 是多音节词, 比较级是前面加 more, 且要和 than 连用, 所以选择答案 B。

() 5. (铜仁) Study hard! _____ you study, _____ results you'll get.

- A. Harder; better
B. The harder; better
C. The harder; the better
D. Harder; the better

【解析】C。“the + 比较级, the + 比较级”是固定结构, 表示“越……越……”。

() 6. (苏州) Julia is very clever. In fact, I doubt whether anyone in the class has _____ IQ.

- A. a high B. a higher
C. the higher D. the highest

【解析】B。不定冠词加上形容词的比较级表示最高级。句意: 我怀疑班上是否有比她智商更高的学生了。

() 7. (重庆) —Who did English homework better, Leo or Nick?

—Leo was more careful. I think Leo did _____ Nick.

- A. as good as B. as well as
C. better than D. worse than

【解析】C。根据句意, Leo 更仔细, 所以他做得比 Nick 好, 故答案选 C。

() 8. (朝阳) —Why don't you like pigs, Molly?

—Because they are _____.

- A. cute B. ugly
C. smart D. friendly

【解析】B。cute “可爱的”，ugly “丑的”，smart “聪明的”，friendly “友好的”。根据问句可知不喜欢的原因是太丑了。

() 9. (北京) Tian'anmen square is one of _____ squares in the world.

- A. large B. larger
C. largest D. the largest

【解析】D。根据 one of 和 in the world 可知要用形容词的最高级，而且 the 不能省略，故答案选 D。

() 10. (广州) We love to go to the country in spring as the flowers smell so _____.

- A. well B. nice
C. wonderfully D. nicely

【解析】B。根据前面的 smell 可知，空格要填的词修饰系动词 smell，只有形容词 nice 才能修饰，故答案选 B。

() 11. (杭州) —Tina, you know what? We can have a dog!

—Great! But I prefer to have a cat. It is _____ to take care of.

- A. easy B. easier
C. easiest D. the easiest

【解析】B。根据句意可知选择养猫的原因是猫更容易照顾，需用形容词的比较级，故答案选 B。

() 12. (常州) I think Bob is the suitable person to take the job because he can do the work well with _____ money and _____ people.

- A. less; less B. less; more
C. more; fewer D. less; fewer

【解析】D。本题考查形容词和副词的比较级，money 是不可数名词，应该用 little 的比较级 less，people 是可数名词，应该用 few 的比较级 fewer。more 在这里不符合题意。

() 13. (广州) The boy doesn't speak _____ his sister, but his written work is very good.

- A. as well as
B. so good as
C. more better than
D. more worse than

【解析】A。由后面的转折词 but 可知，这个男孩说得没有姐姐好。“和……一样好”要用同级比较 as ... as ... 结构。而且这里修饰动词，故用副词。

() 14. (河北) She always does her homework _____ than her brother.

- A. more careful B. careful
C. more carefully D. carefully

【解析】C。这里修饰动词需要副词。而且后有标志词 than，故选 more carefully。

() 15. (安徽) —Would you please drive _____? My plane is taking off.

—I'd like to, but safety comes first.

- A. faster B. better
C. more carefully D. more slowly

【解析】A。根据后面内容可知是让司机开快点。

() 16. (扬州) —Was Henry late for the concert yesterday?

—No. He got there even ten minutes _____ than us two.

- A. earlier B. earliest
C. later D. latest

【解析】A。根据回答 No. 可知没有迟到，even 暗示他甚至比我们早到 10 分钟，故用比较级 earlier。

() 17. (通化) Taking buses in Beijing is _____ than taking a taxi.

- A. more cheap
B. much cheaper
C. a little cheap
D. less cheaper

【解析】B。根据常识可知乘公交车比坐出租车便宜得多，cheap 比较级为 cheaper。

() 18. (锦州) We don't have much home-



work now and our school bags are _____ they used to be.

- A. as heavy as
B. not as heavy as
C. as heavily as
D. not as heavily as

【解析】B。根据句意可知是不如过去重了，故排除A、C，而且系动词are后应用形容词，故选B。

- () 19. (山西) —How often do you go to a concert?
—_____ ever. I'm not interested in that at all.
A. Usually B. Hardly
C. Almost

【解析】B。由后面的“I'm not interested in

that at all.”可知对音乐会一点都不感兴趣，故选择表否定的副词hardly。

- () 20. (陕西) Let's do it _____. There is only five minutes left.
A. hardly B. slowly
C. quickly D. politely

【解析】C。由后面的“‘There is only five minutes left.’”可知只有5分钟时间了，所以要快点，故答案选C。

- () 21. (兰州) Now the air in our city is _____ than it used to be. Something must be done to stop it.
A. very good B. much better
C. rather bad D. even worse

【解析】D。根据句意可知现在城市的空气比以前糟糕得多，故用bad的比较级worse。



实战模拟

一、单项选择

从下列各题所给的A、B、C和D四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. —Tom is six and he is _____ his sister Jane. How old is Jane?
—Three.
A. as old as
B. two years older than
C. three years younger than
D. twice as old as
- () 2. My parents have always made me _____ about myself, even when I was twelve.
A. feeling well B. feeling good
C. feel well D. feel good
- () 3. —_____ terrible weather it is!
—It is said that it will get _____ later.
A. What; bad B. What; worse
C. How; bad D. How; worse
- () 4. —What do you think of Andy Lau?
—Oh, he is my favourite singer. I

like him _____ of all the singers.

- A. good B. well
C. better D. best
- () 5. —Didn't Bob get ready for his English speech?
—No, he didn't. During his speech he was very _____.
A. excited B. worried
C. nervous D. confident
- () 6. People think _____ more and more _____ to protect the environment.
A. that; impossible
B. it; important
C. this; necessary
D. /; interesting
- () 7. Jimmy, you've tried your best this time. We are really _____ of what you have done.
A. excited B. strange
C. happy D. proud

- () 8. —Who won the long jump?
—Bob did. He jumped _____ all the others.
A. longer than B. as long as
C. longest of D. longest in
- () 9. Our food is _____ for four people to eat at least.
A. enough B. few
C. many D. little
- () 10. _____ people we help, _____ we feel.
A. Many; the more happily
B. The more; the happier
C. All; the happiest
D. Most; the most happy
- () 11. —Do you like the *Moonlight Sonata*?
—Sure, it sounds really _____.
A. clear B. clearly
C. beautiful D. beautifully
- () 12. —Be careful not to drop the Ming Dynasty vase.
—Yes, we can't be _____.
A. too careful
B. very careful
C. too careless
D. careless enough
- () 13. —I can't afford the white dress. Can you show me something cheaper?
—What about the orange one? The price is a little _____.
A. cheaper
B. lower
C. higher
D. more expensive
- () 14. The population of Tianjin is _____ than that of Shanghai.
A. larger B. less
C. smaller D. fewer
- () 15. —Mum, could I have an MP3 like this?
—Certainly, we can buy _____ one, but as good as this. The price of this kind is a little high.
A. a cheap B. a cheaper
C. a small D. a smaller
- () 16. He's not got another job yet and it's not _____ he will for some time.
A. likely B. easily
C. nearly D. lonely
- () 17. —Is your headache getting _____?
—No, it's worse.
A. better B. bad
C. less D. well
- () 18. Bob ran the 100 metres in 9.91 seconds, and I have not seen anyone _____ this year.
A. the best B. better
C. the most D. more
- () 19. Chen Jia, you have to keep your bedroom _____.
A. to tidy B. tidying
C. tidy D. tidied
- () 20. —What delicious bread!
—It would taste _____ with butter.
A. good B. better
C. bad D. worse
- () 21. Our family has bought a car so we can travel _____ than before.
A. most easily B. easier
C. easily D. more easily
- () 22. The new group of students is better behaved than the other group who stayed here _____.
A. early B. earlier
C. earliest D. the earliest
- () 23. Though he started late, Mr Guo played the piano as well as, if _____ others.
A. not better than B. not better
C. no better than D. better
- () 24. Work gets done _____ when people



do it together, and the rewards are higher too.

- A. easily B. very easy
C. more easily D. easier

() 25. You're driving too fast. Can you drive _____?

- A. more slowly a bit
B. slowly a bit more
C. a bit more slowly
D. slowly more a bit

() 26. —You are standing too near to the TV. Can you move a bit _____?
—OK, Mum. Is it all right here?

- A. faster B. slower
C. farther D. nearer

() 27. We are glad to see our hometown is developing _____ these years than ever before.

- A. less quickly B. more quickly
C. most quickly D. quicker

() 28. The horse is getting old and can't run _____ it did.

- A. as faster as B. so fast than
C. so faster as D. as fast as

() 29. This year they have produced _____ grain _____ they did last year.

- A. as less; as B. as few; as
C. less; than D. fewer; than

() 30. —Hi, Mark. How was the musical evening?

—Excellent! Lucy and Andy performed _____ and they won the first prize.

- A. skillfully B. commonly
C. willingly D. nervously

二、改错

A. 从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出一项错误项，并改正过来。

1. The three fishermen saw strange something
A B C

in the lake last week.

D

错误项 _____ 改正 _____

2. Luckily, the weather is not so badly as
A B C D
yesterday.

错误项 _____ 改正 _____

3. Who is the stronger in your class?
A B C D

错误项 _____ 改正 _____

4. Winter is coming and the days are
A
getting cold and colder.
B C D

错误项 _____ 改正 _____

5. She was very glad for see her father
A B C D
back from a holiday.

错误项 _____ 改正 _____

B. 下面句子每题均有一处错误，找出并改正过来。

- I can wait more patiently above the sea for quite a long time. _____
- Before my classmates, it seems always difficult for me to do things well as them. _____
- As a result, people in the modern world generally live much more longer than people in the past. _____
- The fish today tastes more nicely than the one yesterday. _____
- He dived deeply into the water. _____

三、完成句子

根据所给汉语的内容，用英语完成下列句子（每空一词）。

- 凯特确实很友好，她从不对其他人生气。
Kate is _____. She is never _____ others.
- 我太累了，再也走不动了。
I am _____ walk any _____.
- 在许多大城市，房价太高了。大多数人

要攒一辈子的钱才能买得起一套房子。

In many big cities, the _____
are too _____. Most people have to
_____ all their lives to buy
a house.

4. 李博士忙于上网，把时间给忘了。

Dr Li was so _____ the
Internet that he forgot the time.

5. 这本书中的一些物理题目对学生来说太难做了。

Some physics problems in this book are
too _____ the students to
_____.

6. 你学习越努力，学到的知识越多。

_____ you work, _____

_____ knowledge you'll get.

7. 你这么说真是太傻了。

That's really _____
_____ say so.

8. 玛丽的妈妈昨天给她买了一件新的绿色丝质大衣。

Mary's mother bought a _____
_____ coat for her yesterday.

9. 当他听到那些可怕的话时，这个男人没有害怕。

The man was _____ when
he heard the _____.

10. 数学比其他科目受欢迎。

Maths is more popular than _____
_____.

第5章 代词

代词是中考测试的重点内容之一。除在单项选择中考查代词以外，在完形填空、用单词的正确形式填空、写作等部分也会涉及对代词的考查。

从考查的内容和知识点来看，主要涉及：(1) 人称代词主格、宾格形式及其主要用法；(2) 名词性物主代词与形容词性物主代词的形式、区别及其主要用法；(3) 反身代词的形式、意义及其主要用法；(4) 常见不定代词的一般用法；(5) 指示代词的一般用法；(6) 相互代词的基本用法；(7) 疑问代词的基本用法。(8) 关系代词的基本用法。纵观历年中考试题，出现频率最高的是不定代词，其次是 it 用法、疑问代词、反身代词以及人称代词等。



考点透视

考点1 多个人称代词作主语时的排序

几个不同的人称代词作主语时，排列顺序一般为 you, he / she and I 和 we, you and they。但上级对下属，长辈对晚辈说话或承认错误时往往把第一人称放在前面。如：

You, she and I passed the examination. 我、你和他都通过了考试。

I and Tony went fishing last Monday. 我和托尼上个星期一去钓鱼了。

考点2 第三人称单数 he 和 she 的特殊用法

一般情况下，he 和 she 分别指代男性和女性。但在一些特殊情况下，he 和 she 可用来指代动物或事物。代替国家、大地、月亮、船只、美丽可爱的动物常用 she，而凶猛、野性的动物常用 he 来代替。如：

China is my motherland. She is getting more and more powerful. 中国是我的祖国。她正变得越来越强大。

考点3 人称代词 it 的用法

(1) it 表示除人以外的事物，还可表示天气、时间、距离、环境或指代性别不太清楚的人或婴儿。如：

It is my uncle's car. 这是我叔叔的小汽车。

Look at the baby over there. It is so lovely. 看那孩子，他(她)太可爱了。

It's about 30 minutes' walk from here to the cinema. 从这里到电影院大约需步行 30 分钟。

(2) it 可作形式主语或形式宾语。如：

It is easy to solve the problem. 解决这个问题很容易。

I found it necessary to practise speaking English every day. 我发现每天练习说英语很有必要。

考点4 形容词性物主代词的用法

形容词性物主代词在句中放在名词前，作定语。名词前如果使用了物主代词，就不再用 a, an, the, this, that, some 等词。如：

Her parents are all teachers. 她父母都是老师。

特别记忆 形容词性物主代词构成的固定短语:

change one's mind 改变主意	do one's homework 做作业
do one's lessons 做功课	lose one's way 迷路
all one's life 终生, 一生	take one's time 不用急, 慢慢来
save one's life 救命	keep one's word 守信
hold one's breath 屏住呼吸	on one's way to... 在某人去……的路上
to one's joy 使某人高兴的是	with one's help 在某人的帮助下

考点 5 “of+名词性物主代词”的用法

这个结构用来表示所属。如: a sister of his 他的一个妹妹; a friend of mine 我的一个朋友

考点 6 由反身代词构成的固定短语

反身代词常跟在某些动词或介词后构成固定搭配。如:

dress oneself 穿衣; help oneself to 随便吃; enjoy oneself 玩得愉快; say to oneself 心里想着, 自言自语; speak to oneself 自言自语; teach oneself 自学; seat oneself 坐下; lose oneself 迷路; for oneself 亲自; by oneself 独自地, 独立地; of oneself 自动地; between ourselves 秘密地, 别告诉别人; among oneself 相互, 在他们之间

考点 7 指示代词的用法

(1) this “这个”和 these “这些”指代时间或空间上较近的人或物, 而 that “那个”和 those “那些”指代时间或空间上较远的人或物。this 和 that 指代单数名词, these 和 those 指代复数名词。如:

What's that? 那是什么?

What's this? 这是什么?

Those are the books about China. 那些是有关中国的书。

(2) this 指下文将要提到或即将发生的事情, that 指刚提到过或已经完成的事情。如:

Now, everybody, watch this. 现在, 大家注意观察这个。

—I didn't pass the examination. 我考试没及格。

—I'm sorry to hear that. 听到这个消息, 我很遗憾。

(3) that, those 指上文已提到过的事物。如:

My sister likes drawing, but I don't like that. 我姐姐喜欢画画, 但我不喜欢。

The days in summer are longer than those in winter. 夏天的白天比冬天的白天长。

(4) 在打电话时, 用 this 指代自己, 用 that 指代对方。如:

—This is Mary. Who is that? 我是玛丽。你是谁?

—This is Susan. 我是苏珊。

(5) 介绍某人时, 常用 “This is ...”。如:

Tony, this is my classmate Wang Li. 托尼, 这是我的同学王丽。

(6) 询问敲门的人是谁时, 可用 that。如:

Who's that? 谁呀?

考点 8 疑问代词 what 和 which 的用法

(1) what 主要用来提问物或问人的职业, 表示 “什么”, 可单独使用, 也可置于名词前, 在句中可作主语、宾语、表语、定语。如:

What is your name? 你叫什么名字?

What colour do you like best? 你最喜欢的颜色是什么?

What do you usually have for breakfast? 通常你早饭吃什么?

(2) which 用来提问人或物, 表示“哪一个”, 可单独使用, 也可接名词或 of 短语, 在句中作主语、宾语、定语。如:

Which bus shall we take? 我们该乘哪辆公共汽车?

Which is his? 哪一个是他的?

Which of the books do you like best? 这些书中你最喜欢哪一本?

考点 9 who, whom 和 whose 的用法

(1) who 是主格, 用来提问人, 表示“谁”, 在句中作主语、表语, 在口语中可代替 whom 作宾语。如:

Who is going to Shanghai with you? 谁将和你一起去上海?

Who is the man over there? 那边那个男人是谁?

Who/Whom did she look after last night? 她昨天晚上照顾谁了?

(2) whom 为宾格, 在句中作宾语, 且介词后的 whom 不可用 who 来代替。如:

Whom/Who are you talking about? 你们在谈论谁?

By whom was the house built? 这房子是谁建的?

(3) whose 为属格, 表示“谁的”, 既可以放在名词前, 也可以单独使用, 在句中作主语、宾语、表语和定语。如:

Whose are these apples? 这些苹果是谁的?

Whose is more expensive? 谁的更贵一些?

Whose father is a policeman? 谁的爸爸是警察?

Whose are you going to borrow? 你打算借谁的?

特别记忆 (1) what, who, which 作表语指人时, what 提问人的职业; who 提问人的身份, 多指姓名、关系; which 则提问在一定范围内的人群中特指的人。

比较:

—What's your brother? 你哥哥是干什么的?

—He is a doctor. 他是医生。

—Who is your brother? 谁是你哥哥?

—His name is Li Lei. 他的名字叫李磊。

—Which is your brother? 哪一个是你哥哥?

—The one standing under the tree. 站在树下的那个。

(2) what 与 which 作定语时的区别:

what 泛指“哪种, 什么”, 不限定范围; 而 which 表示在一定范围内选择。

比较: Which book do you want? 你要哪一本书?

What book do you want? 你要什么书?

考点 10 不定代词 some, every, each, none, neither, all, both, either, another 等的用法

(1) some (一些, 某) 一般用于肯定句中, (注: some 有时也可用于表示请求的疑问句中。)

any (任何) 多用于疑问句和否定句。

Will you give me some water? 你可以给我些水吗?

Would you like some meat? 你要一些肉吗?

May I ask some questions? 我可以问一些问题吗?

Could I have some apples? 我可以吃些苹果吗?

(2) every “每一个”，强调共性，作定语，形式上为单数。each “每一个”，强调个性，作定语、主语、宾语和同位语，常与 of 连用。如：

Each student was asked to try again. 要求每一个学生都再试一次。

Each of them has a nice skirt. 他们每一个都有一件漂亮的裙子。

Every child likes playing games. 每个孩子都喜欢玩游戏。

(3) all “(全部)都”，表示三者或三者以上，作同位语时，一般放在连系动词、助动词之后，行为动词之前。none “没有”，表示三者或三者以上都不，后常跟介词 of。如：

We are all from Canada. = All of us are from Canada. 我们都来自加拿大。

None of us is/are afraid of dogs. 我们都不怕狗。

(4) both “(两者)都”，作主语时，看作复数；作定语时，后跟名词复数。either “两者中任何一个”，作主语时，谓语用第三人称单数；作定语时，后跟名词单数。neither “(两者)都不”，含有否定意义，用法同 either。如：

They both swim well. = Both of them swim well. 他们两个游泳技术都不错。

There are trees on both sides/either side of the street. 街道两边都是树。

Neither of us is going to Beijing next week. 我们俩下周都不去北京。

Neither answer is right. 两个答案都不对。

(5) another + 单数名词意为“另一个”。one... the other “一个……，另一个……”。the other + 复数名词 = the others 意为“其他的人或物”(指确定范围内剩下的全部)。others “别人……”

特别记忆 (1) 由于 each 和 every 的意思相近，都表示“每一个”，因此要特别注意它们的区别。each 所描述的对象至少是两个数目中的每一个，而 every 所描述的对象至少是三个数目中的每一个；every 着重强调整体的含义而 each 着重强调个别；every 只能作形容词放于名词前而 each 可以作形容词、代词和副词。如：

You can see a lot of new shops on each side of the street. (因为街道只有两边因此不能用 every)

Each has two coats. (each 是代词不能换用 every)

(2) other 和 another 都有“另外的”意思，要注意它们的区别。

首先一般来说，两者中的“另一个”是 the other，不定数目中的“另一个”是 another。如：

She has a book in one hand and a pen in the other. (这里表示两只手中的另一个因此用 the other)

This cup is broken. Get me another, please.

其次，other 的后面可以接单数或复数的名词，而 another 的后面只能接单数名词。如：

He has other brothers. I am not very well today. Tell them I will go and see them another day.

再次，other 有复数形式，泛指别人时通常不加冠词；而表示其他的人时常要加定冠词；而 another 没有复数形式。如：

Some went to the People's Park, others visited the zoo.

Could you tell the others that I'll be late?

考点 11 不定代词：something, anything, nothing 的用法

当形容词修饰这三个不定代词时，常后置。如：

There's nothing important in today's newspaper. 今天报纸上没有什么重要内容。



考点 12 one 和 none 的用法

不定代词 one 指代可数名词的单数，即指人，也指物。它的复数形式是 ones，在句中可以作主语、宾语、定语等。如：

He is not the one who is easily cheated. (one 指人)

I've made some cakes. Would you like one of them? (one 指物)

I prefer red roses to white ones. (ones 指物)

Are they the ones who moved here a few days ago? (ones 指人)



真题再现

- () 1. (安徽) The teacher asked the boy many questions, but he only answered _____ of them.

A. some B. lots
C. each D. few

【解析】A。老师问了很多问题，但是他只回答上了“一些”。lots of 很多；each of 每个；few of 几乎没有。故选答案 A。

- () 2. (安徽) —I need something for cutting the paper.

—Oh, you want a knife? OK, I'll get _____ for you.

A. it B. that
C. this D. one

【解析】D。it 是特指前文出现过的某人某事，是特指；this 只做指示代词；one 代替上文的可数名词单数，是泛指，这里是代替 a knife。

- () 3. (河北) She is new here, so we know _____ about her.

A. nothing B. something
C. anything D. everything

【解析】A。句意为“她是新来的，因此我们对她一点也不了解。”nothing 是否定之意，故选 A。

- () 4. (河北) Emma, can you introduce _____ to Alice? I want to meet her.

A. him B. his
C. me D. my

【解析】C。动词之后应用代词的宾格形式，可排除 A、D。又有后句“我想认识她”

可推断应选 C。

- () 5. (晋江) —Who teaches _____ English?

—No one. I teach _____.

A. you; myself B. your; myself
C. you; me

【解析】A。考查宾格代词和反身代词的使用。teach + sb. + sth. “教某人某事/物”，双宾语；teach oneself 是“自学”的意思。故选择 A。

- () 6. (咸宁) —What a nice MP5! Whose is it?

—It's _____. My father bought me last week.

A. me B. him
C. his D. mine

【解析】D。句意：多好的 MP5，是谁的？空格处需要一个词可以代替一个代词或名词，则需要用名词性物主代词，又要和后面的 my 人称一致，所以选择答案 D。

- () 7. (苏州) —Wow! You've got so many skirts.

—But _____ of them are in fashion now.

A. all B. both
C. neither D. none

【解析】D。由 but 可知这么多裙子没一件是时尚的。neither 两者都不，none 三者或三者以上都不。故选 D。

- () 8. (哈尔滨) Two places of interest in Beijing are well-known to people from

home and abroad. One is the Great Wall, _____ is the Summer Palace.

- A. the other B. another
C. other

【解析】A。前面提到 two places, 所以后面是考查短语 one... the other... “一个……, (两者中的) 另一个……”。句意: 北京的两个名胜国内外享有盛名, 一个是长城, 另一个是颐和园。

- () 9. (镇江) You are in a bad mood all the afternoon. Maybe you need _____ like me to cheer you up.
A. no one B. none
C. someone D. everyone

【解析】C。none 后跟 of 短语, 既可指人又可指物, 表示“没有”, 而 no one 只单独使用, 只指人, 表示“没有一个人, 谁也不”。someone 表示“某个人”, everyone 表示“每个人”。句意: 你整个下午心情都不好, 你需要像我这样的人让你高兴起来。故选择 C。

- () 10. (宜昌) —Hurry, Mike! The bus is coming.
—Wait a moment, please! Let me see if there's _____ left.
A. anything else
B. something important
C. nothing else
D. any other things

【解析】A。形容词修饰不定代词时, 一定要放在不定代词的后面。此句为宾语从句, 再根据句意, 答案只能选 A。

- () 11. (连云港) —Would you like to have _____ cake?
—No, thanks. I've had two. That's

enough.

- A. other B. others
C. another D. the other

【解析】C。考查几个不定代词的用法, other 作前置定语, 修饰可数名词单数或复数名词; others 用作代词, 泛指“其他人”或“其他物”; another 指三者或三者以上中的另一个; the other 两者中的另一个。根据句意, 答案应选 C。

- () 12. (宁夏) —Help _____ to some cakes, Jim.
—Thank you.
A. you B. your
C. yourself D. yourselves

【解析】C。Help oneself to... 意为“随便吃点……”。Jim 是一个人, 应该用 yourself。故答案选 C。

- () 13. (宜宾) —Do you know everyone from Class One?
—Er..., I know some of _____.
A. they B. their
C. theirs D. them

【解析】D。some of them 他们当中的一些, 用宾格, 因此答案为 D。

- () 14. (东阳) —Is this your sweater, Joy?
—No, It's not _____ sweater. _____ is yellow.
A. my, My
B. my, Mine
C. mine, Mine
D. mine, My

【解析】B。考查名词性物主代词和形容词性物主代词的区别, 前者不跟名词, 后者跟名词。故答案选 B。



实战模拟

一、选择括号中适当的词填空

1. This room is cleaner than that _____.
(one, ones)
2. If _____ calls, tell him I'll be back at about three o'clock. (someone, anyone)
3. "It's going to rain," Mrs. Smith said to _____. (her, herself, hers)
4. He has _____ money but not enough to buy that dictionary. (a few, few, a little, little)
5. _____ are good friends. (I, you, he; You, he and I)
6. That is the man _____ car was stolen last night. (who, whom, whose, which)
7. I have _____ homework to do every day. (many, much)
8. There are many shops on _____ side of the street. (every, each)
9. With _____ are you going to make a trip? (who, whom, whose, which)
10. —Is there _____ wrong with your bike?
—Yes, there is _____ wrong with it. (something, anything)

二、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. — _____ won the 100th gold at the Olympics for China?
—Zhang Yining. She's from Beijing.
A. Who B. What
C. When D. Where
- () 2. _____ of these two hats looks good on my daughter. Do you have another one?
A. Both B. All
C. Neither D. None
- () 3. Peter is a reporter. The tape recorder is _____.
A. yours B. hers

- C. his D. mine
- () 4. —Do you know Alice?
—Yes. I know _____ very well.
A. she B. her
C. herself D. hers
- () 5. Is that the man _____ helped us a lot after the earthquake?
A. whose B. which
C. when D. who
- () 6. —Help _____ to some fish, my boy.
—Thanks.
A. you B. yours
C. yourself D. yourselves
- () 7. —Excuse me, are these books _____?
—No, they are _____ classmate's.
A. his; he B. hers; hers
C. your; mine D. yours; my
- () 8. Now Chinese people still remember those exciting days _____ they spent during the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games.
A. that B. who
C. when D. those
- () 9. Bob is old enough to take care of _____.
A. he B. she
C. his D. himself
- () 10. —Do you know _____ the man with sunglasses is?
—I'm not sure. Maybe a reporter.
A. who B. what
C. where D. how
- () 11. Things made by hand are usually more expensive than _____ produced in factories.
A. these B. this
C. that D. those
- () 12. —Is there _____ in today's newspaper?

—Yes, our National Table Tennis won all the seven gold medals once more.

- A. something new
- B. anything new
- C. somebody special
- D. anybody special

() 13. —We have five kinds of schoolbags. Do you like this one?

—No, can you show me _____?

- A. another B. each other
- C. the other D. others

() 14. The girl _____ I just talked with is Ben's sister.

- A. whom B. which
- C. she D. one

() 15. —Look! What's _____ in the sky?

—It looks like a kite.

- A. this B. that
- C. those D. it

三、句型转换

1. My sister is a middle school student, and my cousin is a middle school student, too. (合并成一句)

My sister _____ my cousin are _____ middle school students.

2. I can see some birds in the sky. (改为一般疑问句)

_____ see _____ birds in the sky?

3. She has not any friends. (变为同义句)

She has _____.

4. The man in the office is my father. (就画线部分提问)

_____ your father?

5. Both of them want to go there. (改为否定句)

_____ of them _____ to go there.



第6章 介词

通过分析历年的中考试题可知，对介词的考查主要集中在：(1) 表示时间的介词；(2) 表示方位和运动方向的介词；(3) 常用介词用法辨析；(4) 介词与其他词类的搭配。考查介词的常见题型有单项选择、完形填空、完成句子等。



考点透视

考点1 表示场所、方位的介词

常见的有：at, in, on, to, into, onto, above, over, under, below, by, beside, near, between, among, around, round, about, across, through, into, in (the) front of, behind, at the back of 等。

(1) at, in 表示“在某地”。at 后接小地方，in 后接大地方。如：

Lily has lunch at school. 莉莉在学校吃午饭。

He works in the big city. 他在大城市工作。

(2) in, on, to 表示“位于”。in 表示在某范围之内的位置，on 表示两个地方相邻或接壤，to 表示接近。如：

Taiwan lies in the southeast of China. 台湾位于中国的东南部。(台湾是中国的一部分)

Heilongjiang Province lies on the north of Jilin Province. 黑龙江省位于吉林省的北面。(接壤)

Japan lies to the east of China. 日本位于中国的东部。(靠近，但不接壤)

(3) in, into 表示“进入……内”；on, onto 表示“在(到)……上”。in, on 侧重于状态；into, onto 侧重于动作。如：

He works in a factory. 他在一家工厂工作。

He put the books into the bag before the end of the class. 下课前，他把书放进书包里。

The book is on the table. 书在桌子上。

The workers lifted the tables onto the truck. 工人们把桌子搬到卡车上。

(4) above, over, on 表示“在……之上”，而 below 和 under 表示“在……下面”。above 表示“高于……”，表示相对高度，反义词是 below；over 表示“在……正上方”，反义词是 under；on 表示“在……之上”，与物体表面接触。如：

The plane is flying above the clouds. 飞机在云层上飞行。

There is a bus stop below the mountain. 山下有一个公交车站。

There is a little wooden bridge over the river. 河上有一座小木桥。

She sat under the tree. 她在树底下坐着。

Two books lie on the table. 桌上有两本书。

(5) by, beside, near 都表示“在……旁边；在……附近”，但 by 表示就在旁边，紧挨着；near 表示在空间、时间、程度或关系上距离很近或相隔很近或不远；beside 表示在近旁或紧靠，相当于 next to。如：

We live by/near the lake. 我们住在湖边。

Our house stands beside John's. 我们家在约翰家旁边。

(6) between, among 表示“在……之间”。between 主要用于两者之间,也可以用于三者或三者以上的事物之间;among 用于三者或三者以上的事物之间。如:

The river runs between the two countries. 这条河在两国之间流过。

It is pleasant to walk among the trees in the evening. 傍晚在树林中走一走令人心旷神怡。

(7) around, round, about 均可表示“在……周围”,有时可互换。如:

They sat around/round/about the fire. 他们围火而坐。

在现代英语中,about 用于这种情况已不多见。

另外,表示“到处”,三者也可互换。如:

He travelled around/round/about the world. 他周游了全世界。

用在数字之前表示“大约”,一般用 about 或 around。如:

About /Around 50 people came to the meeting. 大约有 50 人来参加了会议。

(8) across 和 through 表示“穿过;通过”。across 表示从表面穿过、通过;而 through 则强调空间概念,表示从内部穿过、通过。如:

He walked across the square. 他穿过广场。

They walked through the woods in search of the missing child. 他们穿行于树林中,寻找那名失踪的孩子。

(9) in front of, in the front of 表示“在……前面”。in front of 指甲在乙的前面,两者互不包括;其反义词是 behind (在……的后面)。in the front of 意思是“在……的前部”,指甲在乙的内部的前面,其反义词是 at the back of (在……范围内的后部)。如:

The teacher stands in front of the students. 老师站在学生的前面。

Our teacher stands in the front of the classroom. 我们的老师站在教室的前面。(老师在教室里)

考点 2 表示时间的介词

常见的有: at, in, on, before, after, from, since, for, during, between, within, through, throughout, until, till, by 等。

(1) at, in, on 用来表示年、月、日、时刻等。

① at 表示钟点或在某一时刻,有时用在节日前。如:

at 9 o'clock 在九点钟; at noon 在中午; at Christmas 在圣诞节

② on 表示具体某一天的上午、下午、晚上等。如:

on Wednesday morning 在周三早上; on December 3rd, 2008 在 2008 年 12 月 3 日

③ in 用在月份和季节前面或用于某一段时间前。如:

in spring 在春季; in the afternoon 在下午; in the summer holidays 在暑假里

(2) before 表示“前”, after 表示“后”。如:

You must return home before 12 p. m. 你必须在晚上 12 点前回家。

I will visit you after my return from Beijing. 我从北京回来后就去拜访你。

(3) from, since 表示时间起点。from 表示“从(什么时候)开始”,仅说明什么时候开始,不说明某动作或情况持续多久;since 表示“自(某具体时间)以来”,表示某动作或情况持续至说话时刻,通常与完成时连用。since 后接从句时用作连词。如:

He works from Monday to Friday. 他从周一到周五工作。



I haven't eaten since breakfast. 我吃了早饭后到现在还什么都没吃呢。

We have not seen each other since we met for the first time five years ago. 自从五年前第一次相遇, 我们再也没有见过面。(这里 since 是连词)

(4) for, during, between, in, within, through, throughout 等表示一段时间。如:

He stayed in China for five years. 他曾在中国待过五年。

During(In) the past year, he has worked hard at his English and made great progress. 在过去的一年中, 他努力学习英语, 并取得了很大的进步。

She was doing housework between 7 and 9 last night. 昨晚从7点到9点, 她在做家务。

I will be back in a few minutes. 我一会儿就回来。

It snowed throughout the night. 雪下了整整一夜。

(5) by, till, until 表示“到……为止”。

until/till 表示“到……为止”, 在肯定句中用延续性动词, 在否定句中, not ... until/till 译为“直到……才”, 谓语动词用短暂性动词。until/till 后接从句时用作连词。如:

By the time he came to the music hall, the concert had been over. 他到音乐厅时, 音乐会已经结束了。

I waited for him until 12 o'clock. 我等他等到12点。

Don't leave till I arrive. 我没到之前不要离开。(用作连词)

考点3 表示原因的介词

常见的有: because of, for, from, with, of, as 等。如:

He didn't play football yesterday because of the rain. 由于下雨, 他昨天没有踢足球。

Marx had to leave his homeland for political reasons. 由于政治原因, 马克思不得不离开他的祖国。

考点4 其他介词

(1) about, on 作“关于”解。about 是常用词, 表示只是涉及, 并不作详细或深入探讨; on 用于有准备的正式的语言交流, 如演讲、讲学、写作等。如:

Can you tell me something about your family? 能给我讲讲你的家庭情况吗?

He will give us a talk on how to improve oral English. 他将给我们做一次有关如何提高英语口语的演讲。

(2) by, in, with 表示“方法、手段、工具”。如:

He usually goes to work by bike/on a bike. 他通常骑自行车上班。

He got to his office by taxi/in a taxi this morning. 他今天上午乘出租车去上班。

You can see it with a microscope. 用显微镜你就能看见它了。

(3) like, as 表示“像……”。如:

Do it like/as I tell you. 按我说的办。(日常用法中用 like, 规范用法中用 as)

(4) in 表示“穿着; 带着”。如:

She is often in white. 她经常穿白衣服。

(5) as 表示“作为”。如:

As a student, you should study hard. 作为学生, 你应该努力学习。

(6) into 表示“成为”。如:

Cutting machines cut big pieces of metal into small ones. 切割机把大的金属片切割成小片。

(7) by, on, over, through 表示“通过……途径”。如:

We got the news on/over the radio. 我们从广播中听到了这个消息。

They often talk a long time by telephone/through the telephone. 他们常常通话很长时间。

(8) with 表示“和……在一起”，还可用在“with+名词(代词)+形容词(等)”结构中。如：

He lives with his parents. 他和他的父母住在一起。

He often sleeps with the light open. 他常常开着灯睡觉。

(9) 有些介词用于形容词后，与形容词一起构成形容词短语。如：

interested in 对……感兴趣；fond of 喜欢；afraid of 害怕；famous for 因……而著名；different from 与……不同；full of 充满；good at 擅长；bad for 对……有害；short of 缺少；worried about 担心；good for 对……有益



真题再现

() 1. (广州) If you get on well _____ your classmates, you'll enjoy your school life more.

- A. to B. at
C. with D. in

【解析】C。句意为：如果你与同学们相处得很好，你会更加享受学校的生活。get on well with 是固定搭配，意为“和……相处得好”，故选 C。

() 2. (深圳) —Your bag looks the same _____ mine.

—Oh, really? It's a gift _____ my father.

- A. with; to B. with; from
C. as; on D. as; from

【解析】D。the same as 的意思是“和……一样”。后面答句中，from 的意思是“来自于……”。

() 3. (河北) Sally is very happy. There is a big smile _____ her face.

- A. on B. to
C. in D. at

【解析】A。句意为：Sally 很高兴，在她的脸上洋溢着幸福的笑容。on face 是固定搭配，故选 A。

() 4. (宁夏) —Would you like some coffee?

—Yes, and please get me some milk.

I prefer coffee _____ milk.

- A. with B. to
C. of D. on

【解析】A。根据句意，我喜欢加牛奶的咖啡，只有 with 有此意，故答案选 A。

() 5. (东阳) People _____ the southwest of China were in great need of water a couple of months ago.

- A. in B. at
C. to D. on

【解析】A。in 意为“在……内部”。at 指在某个小地点，to 表示两个地方各不相属，on 表示两个地方相邻。故答案选 A。

() 6. (广州) —Guess, how much does it cost?

—I think it costs _____ 15 and 20 dollars.

- A. from B. between
C. among D. with

【解析】B。between 和 among 两个词都有“在……之间”的意思，between 主要指“在两者之间”，among 主要指“在三者或三者以上的中间”，故答案选择 B。

() 7. (广州) —When did your uncle arrive _____ China?

—He got to Guangzhou _____ the morning of the 16th of April.

- A. at; in B. in; in



C. to; on D. in; on

【解析】D. arrive in 后一般接大地点，表示到达某个地方。在具体哪一天或特定条件下的某个时间前应用 on。

- () 8. (广州) The food _____ my country is quite different _____ that



实战模拟

一、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. I hope you will be here at half _____ eight tomorrow morning.
A. in B. at
C. to D. past
- () 2. There is a bird _____ the tree.
A. in B. through
C. on D. around
- () 3. Don't worry _____ your maths. I will help you _____ it.
A. with; about B. about; on
C. about; with D. on; about
- () 4. What's the time _____ your watch, please?
A. on B. in
C. by D. with
- () 5. Could you tell me something about UFO? I am really interested _____ it.
A. of B. with
C. in D. at
- () 6. He left Luxun Park and walked _____ Sichuan road.
A. along B. after
C. for D. to
- () 7. As we all know, the earth moves _____ the sun.
A. around B. over
C. into D. for
- () 8. I will work _____ a doctor in two

here.

A. in; like B. to; from

C. from; to D. in; from

【解析】D. 句意：我们国家的食物和这里的完全不同。

- months.
A. as B. for
C. at D. to
- () 9. His father was so tired _____ a day's work that he went to bed early.
A. after B. before
C. in D. out
- () 10. We were very surprised _____ the news.
A. into B. for
C. out of D. at
- () 11. Fangfang's father is _____ forty years old.
A. about B. for
C. to D. by
- () 12. Wei Fang bought a new pen at a shop _____ her way home.
A. on B. at
C. in D. to
- () 13. _____ yesterday evening she had read two stories.
A. On B. In
C. By D. During
- () 14. English is used _____ business _____ different countries.
A. to; among B. with; for
C. at; between D. for; between
- () 15. Let me show you the place _____ the map.
A. with B. on
C. in D. at

二、填空

用适当的介词填空。

1. The girl would like to have a talk _____ her mother _____ her future.
2. She became a nurse _____ her twentieth birthday.
3. According _____ the doctor, sugar is bad _____ me.
4. My mother is not at home. She will be back _____ two hours.
5. When the little boy saw a ball, he was so happy that he ran _____ it.
6. She looks like Chinese, but _____ fact she is Japanese.
7. The glass fell _____ the table and broke.
8. Tom came into the meeting room and sat down _____ my right.
9. His room is _____ the twelfth floor. Let's go up _____ lift.
10. She often learns English _____ the TV.
11. I like my tea _____ milk and sugar in it.
12. It's good _____ us to go out _____ a walk after supper.
13. We all want to see Huangpu Bridge _____ our own eyes.
14. We are very proud _____ our new progress.
15. The man was holding an umbrella _____ his head.

第7章 时态与语态

时态与语态是中考的必考项目和重点，而且是学习英语的基础，对每一种时态及语态的运用要了如指掌，尤其是他们的特殊运用情况。考查的重点通常放在五种重点时态与语态的构成和运用、三种被动语态（一般现在时、一般过去时、情态动词）的构成和使用。中考主要考查各种时态及语态在状语从句、宾语从句以及其他语境中的运用。考查题型主要有单项选择、完形填空、用所给词的正确形式填空、翻译等。



考点透视

考点1 一般现在时

(1) 表示经常性或习惯性的动作。如：

He cycles to work every day. 他每天骑自行车去上班。

(2) 一些具有客观性的事实，即它们不存在时间的概念，是永恒存在的。如：

The sun rises in the east and sets in the west. 太阳东升西落。

(3) 在时间、条件状语从句中表示将来的动作。如：

If it rains tomorrow, we won't go to Beijing. 如果明天下雨，我们将不去北京。

考点2 一般过去时

(1) 在过去具体时间里所发生的动作或存在的状态。常用的时间状语有 yesterday, last week, an hour ago, the other day, in 1982 等。

—Where did you go yesterday? 昨天你哪里去了？

—I went swimming. 我去游泳了。

(2) 表示在过去一段时间内经常性或习惯性的动作。

When I was a child, I often played football in the street. 当我还是个孩子的时候，我经常在街上踢足球。

考点3 现在进行时

(1) 表示现在（指说话人说话时）正在发生的事情。如：

We are waiting for you. 我们正在等你。

(2) 表示长期的或重复性的动作，说话时动作未必正在进行。如：

Mr Green is writing another novel these days. 这些日子格林先生正在写另一本小说。

(3) 已经确定或安排好的将来的活动。如：

I'm leaving for Qingdao next week. 我打算下周前往青岛。

考点4 过去进行时

(1) 过去进行时可以表示在过去某个时间点发生的事情。时间点可以用介词短语、副词或从句来表示。如：

What was she doing at nine o'clock yesterday morning? 昨天上午9点她在做什么？

When I saw him he was cleaning his room. 当我看见他的时候，他正在打扫房间。

(2) 在复合句中, 如果主句和从句动作都是延续或同时发生的, 那么都可用过去进行时。如:
While he was waiting for the bus, he was reading a newspaper. 他边等车边看报。
He was cleaning his car while I was cooking. 他擦车时我在做饭。

考点 5 一般将来时

表达	用法	例句
be going to	在口语中常用来表示已经决定的或安排要做的事, 常译为“打算做”, 强调主观。	We are going to Beijing tomorrow. 我们打算明天去北京。
	用来表示必然的或很可能发生的事或自然现象, 强调客观。	It's going to rain tomorrow. 明天将下雨。
现在进行时表将来	go, come, leave, start 等表示移动的动词, 可以用现在进行时表将来, 表示安排或计划好的将来的动作。	He is leaving for Tibet tomorrow. 他明天去西藏。
be + 动词不定式	表示安排或计划好了的动作。	My brother is to go to school next week. 我弟弟下周要上学了。

考点 6 过去将来时

过去将来时常用于宾语从句中。如:

Lucy said she would come to see me tomorrow. 露西说她打算明天来看我。

考点 7 现在完成时

(1) 表示过去发生或已经完成的动作对现在造成的影响或结果。如:

I have already posted the photos. 我已经把照片寄出去了。

(2) 表示过去已经开始, 持续到现在的动作或状态, 可以和表示从过去某一时刻延续到现在(包括现在在内)的时间状语连用, 表示持续的动作或状态的词多是延续性动词。如:

We have known each other for three years. 我们已经认识三年了。

(3) 现在完成时可以和 already, never, ever, just, before, yet 等状语连用。如:

I haven't finished the homework yet. 我还没有完成家庭作业。

考点 8 过去完成时

过去完成时表示的动作发生的时间是“过去的过去”。表示过去某一时间, 可以用 by, before 等构成的短语, 也可以用 when, before 等引导的时间状语从句, 或通过上下文表示。如:

We had learned 5,000 words by the end of last month. 到上个月月底, 我们已经学了 5,000 个单词。

考点 9 一般现在时和现在进行时的主要区别

区别	例句
一般现在时表示经常性的动作, 而现在进行时表示现在或现阶段正在发生的动作。	He studies hard. 他(经常)努力学习。
	He is studying hard. 他(此刻或现阶段)正在努力学习。

考点 10 一般过去时和过去进行时的主要区别

区别	例句
1. 强调的重点不同：一般过去时侧重说明某动作在过去发生这一事实，过去进行时侧重强调某动作的持续过程或持续的长度。	It snowed heavily last night. 昨晚雪下得很大。 It was snowing last night. 昨晚一直在下雪。
2. 动作状态不同：一般过去时表示动作已经完成，而过去进行时表示动作在过去某一时刻正在进行。	I did my homework yesterday. 昨天我做了我的家庭作业。 I was doing my homework at 8:00 yesterday evening. 昨晚8点我正在做家庭作业。

考点 11 现在完成时和一般过去时的比较

区别	例句
这两个时态都表示已经发生的事，主要差别是现在完成时表示的动作与现在有关系，或是对现在有影响，或表示从以前到现在这一段时间里发生的事；而一般过去时单纯表示过去的事，与现在没有联系。因此有过去时间作状语时，只能用过去时。	She was here a minute ago. 一分钟之前她还在这里。 (现在不一定在这里) I have already bought a book. 我已经买了一本书。(现在已经有一本书)

考点 12 have (has) been to, have (has) been in 和 have (has) gone to 的区别

词条	用法	例句
have/has been (to)	表示“曾经到(来)过某地”，但是已经不在那个地方了。	—Where have you been? 你去哪儿了? —I've been to the cinema. 我去看电影了。
have/has gone to	表示“到某地去了”，可能在途中或已到达目的地，此时不在说话的地点。	The kids have gone to the zoo. 孩子们到动物园去了。
have/has been in	表示“在某地”。	She has been in Beijing for 5 days. 她已来北京5天了。

考点 13 在连词 when, before, as soon as, until, if 引导的表示将来行为的状语从句中，常用一般现在时表示将来

例句：I will call you as soon as I get to Beijing. 我一到北京就给你打电话。

My brother wants to be a basketball player when he grows up. 我弟弟长大后想成为一名篮球运动员。

考点 14 用“used to + 动词原形”或“would + 动词原形”也可以表示过去经常或反复发生的动作

要注意两者的区别：used to do 表示“过去常做而现在不做某事了”，would do 只表示“过去有做某事的习惯”。如：

My grandfather used to tell me stories when I was young. 在我小的时候，爷爷经常给我讲故事。(现在不讲了)

The old man would sit here for an hour. 这位老人过去在这儿一坐就是一小时。

考点 15 定语从句中的动作如果发生在主句动作之前, 就要用过去完成时

例句: I found the pen which I had lost. 我找到了我丢失的那支钢笔。

考点 16 在现在完成时中, 非延续性动词不能与表示一段时间的状态连用, 但在否定句中则可以

例句: I have begun to work for 5 hours. (误)

考点 17 有些及物动词如 give, send, take, bring, teach, show, tell, buy, pass, get 等常常带有两个宾语, 变为被动语态时, 可以将其中一个宾语改为主语, 另一个保留不动。若将直接宾语变为主语, 需要借助介词 to, 放在间接宾语之前

例句: They gave the visitors a warm welcome. → A warm welcome was given to the visitors. 他们对来访者表示热烈欢迎。

考点 18 有些及物动词如 buy, make, find, get 等在被动语态中被保留的间接宾语前通常加 for, 此时 for 不可以省略

例句: Mother bought me a computer. → A computer was bought for me. 妈妈给我买了一台电脑。

考点 19 含有感官动词或使役动词的主动句, 在主动语态中用不带 to 的不定式作宾补, 变为被动语态时要加上 to

例句: He made us laugh. → We were made to laugh. 我们被逗笑了。

考点 20 主动形式表示被动意义

(1) wash, sell, read, write 等系动词作不及物动词, 与副词连用时常主动形式表示被动意义。如:

These clothes sell well. 这些衣服很畅销。

(2) feel, sound, taste, smell 等动词常用主动形式表被动意义。如:

The songs sound good. 这些歌听起来很好听。



真题再现

() 1. (广东) —Excuse me, what's this for?

—It's a cleaner and it _____ to pick up dirt.

- A. uses B. is used
C. is using D. used

【解析】B。吸尘器是被人用来打扫的。被动语态的结构: be + 动词的过去分词。故选 B。

() 2. (眉山) —It's difficult for the village children to cross the river for school.

—I think a bridge _____ over the river.

- A. should be built

B. is being built

C. has been built

D. was built

【解析】A。桥是被建造的。被动语态的结构: 情态动词 + be + 动词的过去分词。故选 A。

() 3. (北京) The road _____ last year.

- A. builds B. built
C. was built D. is built

【解析】C。根据时间状语 last year 可知应用过去时态, 根据句意可知路是被修建, 故用一般过去时的被动语态。

() 4. (南京) —Can you sing this English song?

—Of course, I can. It _____ many times on the radio.

- A. taught B. has taught
C. is taught D. has been taught

【解析】D。这里 It 指代 this English song, 与 teach 是被动关系, 故用被动语态, 排除 A、B 选项; 再由 many times 可知用现在完成时的被动语态。故选 D。

() 5. (安徽) —Have you ever been to Shanghai, Mary?

—Yes. I _____ there for three days with my parents last month.

- A. have gone B. have been
C. went D. was

【解析】D。虽然上句是使用完成时态问的, 但是答语后有 last month 过去时间状语, 所以用过去时态; 又有 for three days 一段时间, 所以不用短暂动词 went 而用 was 过去式。

() 6. (河北) I _____ my clothes, and the phone rang.

- A. wash B. washed
C. am washing D. was washing

【解析】D。句意为“当我在洗衣服的时候, 电话铃响了”。根据 rang 可知发生在过去, 故选 D。

() 7. (河北) Everyone _____ I come from Sichuan. Actually, I come from Shandong.

- A. find B. think
C. finds D. thinks

【解析】D。everyone 意为“每个人”, 谓语应为第三人称单数形式, 可排除 A、B。find 意为“发现”, think 意为“认为”, 根据句意应选 D。

() 8. (咸宁) —Could I clean the bedroom for you?

—No, thanks. I _____ it myself.

- A. cleaned
B. have cleaned
C. was cleaning

D. had cleaned

【解析】B。句子意思是: —我能为你打扫卧室吗? —不用了, 我已经自己打扫过了。已经打扫过对现在的影响是不用扫了, 这是现在完成时态的用法, 所以选择答案 B。

() 9. (哈尔滨) Great changes have taken place since we _____ E-Times. And the computer is widely used throughout the world.

- A. entered B. will enter
C. have entered

【解析】A。根据前面的完成时态可以看出是 since 的句式: 现在完成时 + since + 一般过去时。本题的意思是: 自从进入电子邮件时代, 发生了巨大的变化。电脑被广泛应用于世界各地。

() 10. (苏州) —What do you think of the film *Avatar*?

—It's fantastic. The only pity is that I _____ the beginning of it.

- A. missed B. was missing
C. miss D. will miss

【解析】A。错过电影开头部分动作已发生过, 应为过去, 故选 A。

() 11. (兰州) In the past few years there _____ great changes in my hometown.

- A. have been B. were
C. had been D. are

【解析】A。in the past few years 表示“在过去几年里”, 用于现在完成时句子中。

() 12. (宁夏) —Where's Li Hua?

—Look! He _____ tennis on the playground.

- A. plays B. played
C. was playing D. is playing

【解析】D。look 是现在进行时的标志, 故答案选 D。

() 13. (内江) My brother came back home while I _____ homework.

- A. am doing B. were doing
C. was doing



实战模拟

一、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. The students in the classroom _____ to sweep the floor after school.
A. asking B. be asked
C. are asked D. are asking
- () 2. Old people must _____.
A. be spoken to politely
B. speak to polite
C. be spoken politely
D. speak politely
- () 3. Nick _____ a job in a bank, but to our surprise, he didn't take it.
A. is offered B. offered
C. was offered D. has offered
- () 4. —Look at the sign on the right.
—Oh, smoking _____ here.
A. doesn't allow
B. isn't allowed
C. didn't allow
D. wasn't allowed
- () 5. —Do you know Winter Olympic Games?
—Sure. Once Winter Olympics _____ the White Olympics.
A. call B. called
C. was called D. is called
- () 6. More and more people have realized we won't have cleaner water to drink unless something _____ soon.
A. was done B. will be done
C. to be done D. is done
- () 7. The grand buildings _____ in two years.
A. were built B. are built

【解析】C。主句用过去时，从句用过去进行时，又因 I 后用 was，故答案选 C。

- C. will be built D. will build
- () 8. —Lucy, what about going camping if it _____ tomorrow?
—Sounds great!
A. didn't rain B. doesn't rain
C. won't rain D. will rain
- () 9. —Did you give Tom a phone call?
—Yes, I did. But nobody _____.
A. answer B. answered
C. will answer D. had answered
- () 10. Be quiet, please. The students _____ a class now.
A. have B. had
C. are having D. were having
- () 11. We should keep the habit of taking notes when the teacher _____.
A. will talk B. would talk
C. is talking D. was talking
- () 12. Jimmy _____ TV when his mother got home.
A. will watch B. watches
C. is watching D. was watching
- () 13. —Why are you in such a hurry, Mike?
—There _____ an NBA basketball game in ten minutes.
A. will have
B. will be
C. is going to have
D. are going to be
- () 14. Soon you _____ a senior high school student. Isn't it exciting?
A. become B. will become
C. became D. have become
- () 15. We believe that Mary _____ take the



money at that time, though she was poor.

- A. won't B. wouldn't
C. is not going to D. doesn't

() 16. Li Yuchun said she _____ a concert by herself some day.

- A. have B. will have
C. would have D. had

() 17. Eddie and Nancy _____ for ten months.

- A. have died B. have been dead
C. died D. has been dead

() 18. I _____ a copy of Yi Zhongtian's book yet. I might buy one tomorrow.

- A. hadn't bought
B. don't buy
C. won't buy
D. haven't bought

() 19. —Hello! This is Henry speaking.
I'd like to speak to your father.

—Sorry, he has _____ Shanghai.

- A. been in B. been to
C. gone to D. come to

() 20. Shanghai is a beautiful city. I _____ there before.

- A. go B. have been
C. have gone D. will go

二、用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空

1. A lot of water _____ (waste) every year.
It's a serious problem.

2. Now many kinds of work _____ (can do) by robots.

3. English _____ (speak) as a second language in some countries.

4. Fish may _____ (catch) in the river.

5. A new bridge _____ (build) over the river last year.

6. "I'm afraid it _____ (need) mending," Mrs White said and turned off the TV.

7. Vegetables, eggs and fish _____ (sell) in that shop.

8. The children _____ often _____ (tell) to be careful with fire.

9. We are made _____ (work) for 12 hours every day.

10. The apples look good and _____ (sell) well.

11. We asked if Mr Liu _____ already _____ (come) back.

12. They _____ (play) games now.

13. Lucy said she _____ (be) born in 1992.

14. I saw Li Ping yesterday. We _____ (not see) each other since I left Beijing.

15. The earth _____ (travel) round the sun.

第8章 数词

从历年的中考试题来看,数词的考查在中考中占5%左右。考查数词的常见题型有:选择填空、单词拼写和句型转换等。做这类题时,必须要注意基数词和序数词的拼写,分数、不确切数量词间的关系与名词搭配,以及数词在日常生活中的应用等。对数词的考查主要集中在以下几点:(1)基数词的写法。(2)基数词变序数词。(3)分数表达法。(4)数字的日常应用:①日期表示法;②时间表示法;③编号表示法;④岁数表示法。另外,hundred,thousand,million等数词与of的搭配也是常考点。



考点透视

考点1 基数词的构成

(1) 1~12 是独立的数词。它们的拼写形式为:

one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve

(2) 13~19 是在 3~9 词尾加后缀-teen,但应注意 13, 15, 18 的拼写形式。如:

13→thirteen, 14→fourteen, 15→fifteen, 16→sixteen, 17→seventeen, 18→eighteen, 19→nineteen, 20→twenty, 30→thirty, 40→forty, 50→fifty, 60→sixty, 70→seventy, 80→eighty, 90→ninety

(4) 21~99 由十位数和个位数合起来构成的两位数词,需在中间加连字符“-”。如:

21→twenty-one, 38→thirty-eight, 54→fifty-four, 76→seventy-six, 82→eighty-two, 93→ninety-three, 47→forty-seven, 69→sixty-nine

(5) 101~999 的三位数,在十位数与百位数之间加 and;若有个位数,且十位数为零,则在个位数与百位数之间加 and。如:

148→a (one) hundred and forty-eight, 336→three hundred and thirty-six

502→five hundred and two

(6) 1,000 以上的数要用计数逗点,即从个位开始,每隔三位数加一个逗点,第一个逗点处是 thousand (千),第二逗点处是 million (百万),第三个逗点处是 thousand million (英)或 billion (美)(十亿)。如:

1,000→a (one) thousand

5,493→five thousand, four hundred and ninety-three

13,764→thirteen thousand, seven hundred and sixty-four

100,000→a (one) hundred thousand

766,132→seven hundred and sixty-six thousand, one hundred and thirty-two

1,000,000→a (one) million

9,638,751→nine million six hundred and thirty-eight thousand, seven hundred and fifty-one

考点2 序数词的构成

(1) 序数词第一、第二和第三分别为 first, second 和 third。

(2) 4~19 之间序数词的构成方法都是在基数词后加-th, 但有 4 个拼写有变化: 5th→fifth, 8th→eighth, 9th→ninth, 12th→twelfth。

(3) 以-ty 结尾的整十位数的序数词 (除 ten 外) 将 y 变为 i, 再加-eth 构成序数词。注意读音中的 [ɪθ]。它们是 twentieth ['twentɪθ], thirtieth ['θɜːtɪθ], fortieth ['fɔːtɪθ], fiftieth ['fɪftɪθ], sixtieth ['sɪkstɪθ], seventieth ['sevnɪθ], eightieth ['eɪtɪθ], ninetieth ['naɪntɪθ]。

(4) 21 以上的多位数序数词, 只将末位数变为序数词, 前面的其他位数仍用基数词。如:

fifty-fifth 第 55, one thousand and first 第 1001, ninety-eighth 第 98

(5) 第一百、第一千、第一百万、第十亿都是在基数词后直接加-th 构成。如:

hundred→hundredth, thousand→thousandth

(6) 序数词的缩略形式由阿拉伯数字加序数词的最后两个字母构成。如:

first→1st, second→2nd, third→3rd, fourth→4th, twenty-first→21st, thirty-second→32nd, fortieth→40th

考点 3 hundred, thousand, million, billion 等词的用法

(1) 表示不确切数目时, 这时要在 hundred, thousand, million, billion 后加-s 并和 of 连用, 表示“成百”、“成千上万”等意思, 此时这些词前不可加基数词。如:

Hundreds of people were injured when the train went off the rails. 火车出轨时, 数百人受伤。

London has many museums, which thousands of people visit every day. 伦敦有许多博物馆, 每天都有成千上万的人前往参观。

We paid hundreds of millions of dollars in taxes. 我们交纳了数亿美元的税金。

(2) 这几个词在一个确定的数字后表示确切的数目时不能接 of, 且不用复数形式。如:

We finished addressing over three hundred envelopes. 我们写了 300 多个信封的地址了。

They had already spent six thousand dollars on advertisement. 在广告上, 他们已花了 6,000 美元。

考点 4 dozen, score 和 couple 的用法

(1) dozen (十二) 前有具体数字时通常用单数形式, 且后面多直接跟名词。如:

We need three dozen boxes. 我们需要三打盒子。

(2) score (二十) 后跟复数名词时常先加介词 of, 也可以直接加名词。如:

a score of people 二十人。

There are three score cows on the farm. 这个农场有 60 头牛。

特别记忆 “活 70 年”习惯说 “to live for three score years and ten”。

(3) 当 dozen, score 不与具体的数词或 several 连用时, 可以用其复数形式表示“许多”, 后面常接 of。如:

Beside me were dozens of sandwiches and a box of candy. 我旁边有几打三明治和一盒糖果。

He has been a teacher for scores of years. 他当教师已有几十年了。

(4) couple 的用法:

① (一) 对, (一) 双, 两个, 常用固定搭配 “a couple of + 名词复数”, 作主语时谓语动词通常用单数。如

There is a couple of boys waiting for you. 有两个男孩在等你。

② 夫妇, 夫妻。如:

The young couple decides to start their tour immediately. 那对年轻夫妇决定立即开始旅游。

③几个, 三两个, 一些。如:

They walked a couple of miles. 他们步行了几英里。

I'll be back in a couple of days. 我过几天就回来。

考点 5 half 的用法

(1) “half a (an) + 名词”或“a half + 名词”表示“一半……”。如:

half a kilo 半公斤; half an hour 半小时; a half day 半天

(2) “一个半”有两种表示方法。如:

一个半小时 one hour and a half / one and a half hours

五个半苹果 five apples and a half / five and a half apples

考点 6 时刻表示法及读法

(1) 先说分钟, 后说钟点。表示几点过几分, 分钟数不超过 30 时用 past。表示几点差几分或差几分几点, 差的分钟数不超过 29 时, 用 to。如:

It's five past six now. 现在是 6 点 (过) 5 分。

It's twenty-six to nine. 差 26 分 9 点。

(2) 先说钟点, 后说分钟。在日常生活中, 为了简便, 常用这种表达法。如:

It's nine twenty. 9 点 20 分。

(3) 分钟数为 15、45 则用 quarter。如:

9:15 a quarter past nine; 9:45 a quarter to ten

(4) 当表示整点时, 要在基数词后加 o'clock。如:

6 点 → six o'clock; 9 点 → nine o'clock; 8 点 → eight o'clock; 11 点 → eleven o'clock

(5) 时刻的读法常用的有两种: 倒读法是前半个小时用“分钟数 (或 quarter, half) + past + 刚过的点钟数”; 后半个小时用“分钟数 (或 quarter) + to + 下一个点钟数”。顺读法只需依次读出点钟数和分钟数。整点钟时其后都可加“o'clock”。正午前可加“a. m. /am”, 正午后可加“p. m. /pm”。如:

8: 00 a. m. 读为 eight (o'clock) a. m.

8: 20 倒读: twenty past eight; 顺读: eight twenty

8: 15 倒读: (a) quarter past eight; 顺读: eight fifteen

8: 30 倒读: half past eight; 顺读: eight thirty

8: 45 倒读: (a) quarter to nine; 顺读: eight forty-five

8: 50 倒读: ten to nine; 顺读: eight fifty

(6) 时刻表示法及读法:

具体时刻前通常用介词 at。如: at 7:15。

考点 7 年代及年、月、日的表示法和读法

在表示时间时, 汉语中常以“年一月一日”的顺序, 而英语中常以“日一月一年”或“月一日一年”的顺序。在某年、某月、某年某月前用介词 in, 如 in 1999, in March, in April, 2010; 但是在某年某月某日常表达为: on + 月 + 日, 十年/on + 日 + 月, 十年。如:

在 2009 年 12 月 25 日: on December 25th, 2009 或 on 25th December, 2009

(1) “in the 十年代 + s (或 's)”表示“在……世纪……年代”。如:

in the 1970s (in the 1970's) 在 20 世纪 70 年代

(2) 表示某年代的早期、中期和晚期, 在定冠词后、年代前加 early, mid-, late。如:



in the early 1990's 在 20 世纪 90 年代早期 in the mid-1840's 在 19 世纪 40 年代中期

(3) 英语中月份及省略写法:

1 月 → January (Jan.); 2 月 → February (Feb.); 3 月 → March (Mar.);

4 月 → April (Apr.); 5 月 → May (不省略); 6 月 → June (Jun.);

7 月 → July (Jul.); 8 月 → August (Aug.); 9 月 → September (Sept.);

10 月 → October (Oct.); 11 月 → November (Nov.); 12 月 → December (Dec.)

(4) 年份的读法一般两位数两位数地读。整百后加 “hundred”。BC/B. C. 表示 “公元前”, AD/A. D. 表示 “公元后”。如:

1999 年 读作: nineteen ninety-nine; 2000 年 读作: the year two thousand

2008 年 读作: twenty o eight; 1990's / 1990s 读作: nineteen nineties

793 BC 读作: seven nine three BC 或 seven hundred and ninety-three BC

586 AD 读作: five eight six AD 或 five hundred and eighty-six AD

(5) 日子的读法用序数词, 其前常加 the。先读日子后读月份时, 在月份前加 “of”。如:

3 月 6 日 March 6 (th) 读作: March the sixth 或 the sixth of March

考点 8 年龄的表示法

(1) 基数词 + years old。如:

The boss is young, about thirty years old. 老板很年轻, 30 岁上下。

(2) at (或 under) the age of + 基数词。如:

At the age of seven, he went to school. 他 7 岁那年上学。

Children enter school at the age of five, don't they? 孩子们都在 5 岁上学, 是不是?

(3) a + 基数词-year-old + 名词。如:

I know no more about the British history than a ten-year-old schoolboy. 关于英国历史, 我的知识并不比一个 10 岁的孩子多。

He draws very well for a six-year-old child. 对一个 6 岁的孩子而言, 他画得非常好。

(4) “in one's + 整十数的复数形式” 表示一个不确定的年龄。如:

She was in her fifties, but she looked young. 她已经 50 多岁了, 但是看起来很年轻。

By the time he was in his late twenties, his songs were famous around the world. 在不到 30 岁时, 他创作的歌曲已享誉世界了。

考点 9 编号的表示法

编号可用序数词或基数词表示, 序数词位于名词之前, 并加定冠词 the; 基数词位于名词之后。电话号码中的 0 可读作 zero 或 o [əʊ], 双数如 55 可读作 five, five 或 double five, 中间的 “-” 号可读作 dash, 也可稍作停顿而不读出。如:

电话号码 008-902-435-7336	写作: Tel. No. 008-902-435-7336 读作: telephone number zero, zero, eight, (dash) nine, zero, two, (dash) four, three, five, (dash) seven, double three, six
886 房间	写作: Room 886 读作: room eight eight six
27 路公交车	写作: Bus No. 27 读作: bus number twenty-seven 或 the number twenty-seven Bus

第 52 号	写作: No. 52 读作: number fifty-two
第 356 页	写作: P 356 读作: page three hundred and fifty-six
邮政编码 438800	写作: Postcode 438800 读作: postcode four three eight eight zero zero

考点 10 分数、小数、百分数的表示法

(1) 表达分数时分子须用基数词, 分母须用序数词。基数词与序数词之间常加 “-”, 分子若是 1 以上的任何数, 分母须用复数形式, 用 and 连接分数中的整数和分数部分。先读分子, 再读分母; 复杂的分数的读法为 “分子 + over + 分母”, 分子和分母都用基数词来读。如:

$\frac{1}{2}$: one half 或 a half (不读作 one second); $\frac{1}{8}$: one-eighth

$\frac{5}{9}$: five-ninths; $2\frac{3}{5}$: two and three-fifths

$\frac{74}{135}$: seventy-four over one hundred and thirty-five

(2) 表示小数时, 小数点读作 point, 小数点后面的数字依次用基数词读出, “0” 读作 zero 或 nought。所有的数字都依次读出也可。如:

0.00035 读作: (zero) point zero zero zero three five

22.126 读作: twenty-two point one two six 或 two two point one two six

(3) 百分数由 “基数词 + percent” 构成。如:

56% 读作: fifty-six percent; 68% 读作: sixty-eight percent

(4) 分数或百分数可作主语、宾语、表语、定语和状语, 作主语时句子谓语动词的数与分数或百分数所代表的名词保持一致。如:

Three fifths of the students are women. 五分之三的学生是女性。

My mother did it one third the time it took me. 妈妈做此事花的时间是我的三分之一。

考点 11 数学运算式的表示法

数学运算的 “+、-、 \times 、 \div ” 常用 plus (and), minus, times 和 divided by 表示。

$5+7=12$	Five plus (and) seven is (或 makes, equals) twelve.
$11-8=3$	Eleven minus eight is three.
$4\times 6=24$	Four times six is twenty-four. Four multiplied by six is twenty-four.
$30\div 5=6$	Thirty divided by five is six. Five into thirty equals six.

考点 12 倍数的表示法

表达倍数时, 常用 half 表示 “一半”, 用 once 表示 “一倍”, 用 double, twice 表示 “两倍”, 用 times 表示三倍以上的倍数。



句型	例句
... times as many / much (+名词) as...	He has collected more than three times as many stamps as I.(have) . 他收集的邮票是我的三倍以上。 Then I accept the money. Give me three times as much as Antonio borrowed from me. 那么我收下这钱。还给我安东尼奥所借钱数的三倍就行了。
... times the size/weight/ height ... of	The earth is 49 times the size of the moon. 地球的大小是月球的49倍。
... times + 比较级 + than...	That old man is twice older than his grandson. 那位老人的年龄比他孙子的年龄大两倍。

考点 13 大约数的表示法

表示“大约……”可以用 about (or so) “大约”, almost (nearly) “几乎”, less than (under) “少于”, more than (over) “多于”等表示。如:

About three days later I left a note on his desk. 大约三天以后,我在他的办公桌上留了一张纸条。

We stayed in China for nearly two months last year. 去年我们在中国待了将近两个月。

My home is less than five kilometers away from our school. 我家离学校不到5公里。

考点 14 频率表示法

(1) every + 基数词 + 复数名词 = every + 序数词 + 单数名词, 意为“每……”。如:

every two days = every second day = every other day 每隔一天/每两天

(2) every other + 单数名词, 意为“每隔……, 每两……”。如:

every other line 每隔一行/每两行

考点 14 不定数量常用的词和短语

	修饰词语	汉语意思	例句
后面接不可数名词的词或短语	a great deal of	大量	He did a great deal of exercise so as not to put on weight. 他做大量运动以防止发胖。
	a large amount of	大量	A large amount of money is spent on tobacco every year. (我们) 每年在烟草上花去大量的钱。
	much	许多, 大量	There is much noise in this radio. 这收音机杂音很多。
	a bit of	一点	I think she might have lost a bit of weight. 我想她体重可能减轻了一些。
	a little/little	一点/几乎没有	There is a little water in the glass. 杯子里有一点点水。

续表

	修饰词语	汉语意思	例句
后面接不可数名词或可数名词复数的短语	plenty of	足够的, 大量	Plenty of exercise will help you keep in shape. 充分的运动会帮助你保持体形。
	a great mass of	大量	A great mass of snow has fallen off the roof. 从房顶掉下了一大块积雪。
	a large quantity of/ (large) quantities of	大量	The factory needs a large quantity of water. 这家工厂需要大量的水。 The squirrels hide a large quantity of nuts in the trees for winter. 为了过冬, 松鼠在树上储藏了许多坚果。 Great quantities of sand were washed down the hillside by the rain. 雨水把大量的泥沙冲下山坡。
后面接可数名词复数的词或短语	a (large) number of	大量	A large number of books have been stolen from the library. 图书馆遗失了很多书。
	a good / great many	大量	You might find a great many helpful suggestions. 你会得到许多有益的建议。
	many/many of	许多, 大量	It's discouraging that so many students have failed. 那么多学生考不及格, 真令人泄气。
后面接可数名词单数	many a	许多, 大量	Many a boy learns to swim before he can read. 许多孩子还不会认字就会游泳。



真题再现

- () 1. (咸宁) The _____ World Table Tennis Championship began _____ the morning of May 25, 2010 _____ Moscow, Russia.
A. Fifty; in; in
B. Fiftieth; on; in
C. Fiftieth; in; on
D. Fifty; on; in

【解析】B。首先, 第五十届世乒赛要用序数词 the Fiftieth。其次, 在 2010 年 5 月 25 日具体一天的上午要用介词 on; 而在俄罗斯的莫斯科市要用介词 in。所以选择答案 B。

- () 2. (铜仁) The number of the students in our school is about nine _____. _____ of them are boys.
A. hundred; Two thirds
B. hundred; Two third
C. hundreds; Two thirds

D. hundreds; Two third

【解析】A。hundred, thousand, million 前有数字时, 用单数形式; 前面无数字修饰时, 用复数, 并接 of 短语来修饰名词。表示分数时, 分子用基数词, 分母用序数词。如分子大于 1, 分母用序数词的复数形式。故选择 A。

- () 3. (宜宾) I got a good present on my _____ birthday.

A. nine B. ninth
C. the nine D. the ninth

【解析】B。九岁生日用序数词, 又因前面有物主代词 my, 不能用 the, 故答案应选 B。

- () 4. (重庆) I got a beautiful bike on _____ birthday. I like it very much.

A. fifteenth B. fifteen
C. my fifteen D. my fifteenth

【解析】D。我的第 15 个生日, 故答案 D。



实战模拟

单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. Could you tell us how to read the number 18,306,211?
A. eighteen million, three hundred and six thousands, two hundred eleven
B. eighteen million, three hundred and six thousand, two hundred and eleven
C. eighteen millions, three hundred six thousands, two hundreds and eleven
D. eighteen thousand, three hundred and six, two hundred eleven
- () 2. Shakespeare was born in _____.
A. 1660s B. 1660's
C. the 1660 D. the 1660's
- () 3. Bill said they were going to have _____ holiday.
A. a two-weeks'
B. a two-week
C. two weeks'
D. two weeks
- () 4. Over _____ of the articles on education have been published.
A. two thirds
B. two third
C. seconds three
D. seconds third
- () 5. My father left home at about _____.
A. six thirty
B. thirty six
C. thirty to six
D. six past thirty
- () 6. We all think that the _____ century will bring us more hopes.
A. twenty-first
B. twentieth-first
C. twenty-one
D. twentieth-one
- () 7. —What's your room number?
—It's _____.
A. The 601 Room
B. 601 Room
C. The Room 601
D. Room 601
- () 8. _____ the students usually surf on the Internet and get information.
A. 60 percents of
B. 60 percent
C. 60 percent of
D. 60 percents
- () 9. Several _____ new books were sold out last week.
A. of thousand B. thousands
C. thousand of D. thousand
- () 10. Which is right?
A. 2009, June 25
B. 25th June, 2009
C. June 25, 2009
D. June 25st, 2009
- () 11. Tomorrow is my _____ birthday.
A. sixteen B. sixteenth
C. the sixteenth D. the sixteen
- () 12. We have stayed at this school for _____. Which following choice is wrong?
A. two and a half years
B. two years and a half
C. two years and half a year
D. both A and B

第9章 非谓语动词

非谓语动词在中考试题中考查的比例比较重,考查内容主要有:

1. it 作形式主语、宾语的用法。
2. 感官动词后不定式作宾语补足语和动词-ing 形式作宾语补足语的用法。
3. 动词不定式与疑问代词和疑问副词的连用。
4. 一些特殊动词的动词不定式作宾语补足语时不带 to, 但变为被动语态时就要带 to。
5. 有些动词既可接不定式也可接动词 ing 形式作宾语, 但表达的意思不同。

其考查题型主要为: 单项选择、完形填空、用所给词的正确形式填空、翻译题等。



考点透视

考点1 非谓语动词作宾语

(1) 有些动词只能用动名词作宾语。如: admit, advise, consider, finish, mind, miss, permit, practise, enjoy, imagine。如:

He finished reading the book yesterday. 他昨天看完这本书。

Have you considered looking for one special friend? 你是否考虑过找一位特别的朋友呢?

(2) 一些动词如 ask, agree, beg, care, choose, decide, expect, force, fail, hope, learn, long, manage, offer, plan, prepare, promise, want, wish 等接动词不定式作宾语。如:

We want to learn some body language. 我们想学习一点手势语。

She has decided to go to Guangzhou tomorrow. 她已经决定明天去广州。

(3) 有些动词既可用动名词作宾语, 也可用不定式作宾语, 但两者的意义有所不同。

① like, love, prefer, hate 等表示喜爱、厌恶、偏好的情感动词, 后跟不定式表示“仅一时的爱憎情感或指特定的或具体某次行为”; 后跟动名词表示“抽象性的一种倾向、爱好或习惯性的动作”。如:

I don't like to read this novel. 我不喜欢看这本小说。

I don't like reading in bed. 我不喜欢在床上看书。

I prefer to work rather than sit idle. 我情愿工作而不愿闲坐着。

注意: 这几个词前面有 would, should 时, 后面都只跟不定式。如:

Would you like to dine out? 你想出去吃饭吗?

② 动词 remember, forget, stop, go on, try 等。(见“第3章 动词与动词词组”)

(4) 动词 need, want, require 以及 be worth 之后接动名词的主动语态含有被动的意思, 相当于不定式的被动语态。如:

His clothes need mending/to be mended. 他的衣服需要缝补。

These babies will require taking good care of. 这些婴儿需要细心照料。

His talk is well worth listening to. 他的报告很值得一听。

考点2 非谓语动词作定语

(1) 现在分词作定语表示主动意义, 过去分词作定语表示被动意义。但是有些不及物动词的过去分词不表示被动, 只表示完成。这类过去分词有: gone, come, fallen, risen, changed, arrived, returned, passed 等。如:

boiled water (开水), fallen leaves (落叶), newly arrived goods (新到的货), the risen sun (升起的太阳), the changed world (变了的世界)

(2) 不定式作定语通常要放在被修饰的词后, 往往表示未发生的动作。如:

I have a lot of work to do. 我有许多事要做。

考点3 非谓语动词作宾语补足语

(1) 带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语的动词有: ask, allow, get, warn, tell, invite, wish, want, like, hate, expect, encourage, advise, persuade, permit, know 等。如:

Would you like me to help you? 你要我帮忙吗?

Father will not allow us to play on the street. 爸爸不会允许我们在大街上玩。

(2) 用不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语的动词有: see, hear, watch, notice, observe, listen to, look at, feel, let, have, make 等。但是, 这类句子变为被动语态时, 不定式符号 to 仍保留。如:

I saw him dance. = He was seen to dance. 我看见他跳舞。

The boss made them work the whole night. = They were made to work the whole night. 老板让他们整夜干活。

(3) 能带现在分词作宾语补足语的动词常见的有: see, feel, watch, make, look at, notice, hear, keep, find, get, listen to, let, have 等。如:

You often see musicians performing in the streets. 你经常看到音乐家在街上演奏。

We watched three old men sharing their food with each other. 我们观看三个老人相互分享他们的食物。

(4) 当宾语是不定式(短语)时, 如果其后有宾语补足语, 则须用 it 作形式宾语, 而把真正的宾语放在补语之后, 即: “主语 + 谓语 + it + 宾补不定式(短语)”。常见的谓语动词有 think, make, feel, find 等。如:

He found it important to study the situation in Russia. 他发现研究俄国形势非常重要。

考点4 常见不定式句型

(1) It's time to do sth. = It's time for sth. 是该做……的时候了。如:

It's time to go to bed. = It's time for bed. 该睡觉了。

(2) There is no time left (for sb.) to do sth. 没有时间做某事了。如:

There is no time left for me to think more about it. 我没有时间再考虑这件事了。

(3) It takes sb. + 时间 + to do sth. 某人花费时间做某事。如:

It takes me half an hour to read English every day. 我每天花半个小时读英语。

(4) be + 形容词 + enough + to do sth. 足够……做某事。如:

The child is old enough to dress himself. 这小孩够大了, 能自己穿衣服了。

(5) be + too + 形容词 + to do sth. 太……而不能做某事。如:

The man was too excited to speak. 那人激动得说不出话来。

(6) be ready to do sth. 准备做某事。如:

He is ready to go shopping. 他准备去购物。

(7) It is kind of sb. to do sth. 谢谢某人(做)某事。如:

It's kind of you to help me. 谢谢你帮助我。

(8) It's + 形容词 + for sb. + to do sth. 对某人来说做某事很……。如:

It is very important for us to have a good knowledge of international trade. 对我们来说, 掌握国际贸易知识是很重要的。

(9) be afraid to do sth. 不敢做某事。如:

The girl is afraid to go out alone at night. 那女孩晚上不敢独自出去。

(10) prefer to do A rather than do B 宁愿做 A 也不做 B。如:

He preferred to go to work on foot rather than take a bus. 他宁愿步行去上班也不愿乘公交车。



真题再现

() 1. (深圳) —Mary, would you like to _____ this game?

—I'd love to, but I have to finish _____ the composition first.

A. join in; to write

B. attend; writing

C. join; to write

D. take part in; writing

【解析】D. take part in 是“加入某项活动”的意思, 后面的 finish doing sth. 是指做完某事。

() 2. (哈尔滨) As teenagers, we're old enough _____ with housework.

We can help set the table, wash the dishes and clean our own rooms.

A. to help B. helping

C. helped

【解析】A. 根据 enough 的句型“be + adj. + enough + to do sth.”可知用动词不定式的形式。

() 3. (兰州) We have two rooms _____, but I can't decide _____.

A. to live; to choose which one

B. lived; choose which one

C. to live in; which one to choose

D. live; which one

【解析】C. 本题考查动词不定式的用法。根据句意: 我们有两个屋子可居住, 但是我不知道选择哪一间。第一个句子的 live in 的 in 不能省略。“选择哪一个”用“which one to choose”。故选 C。

() 4. (广州) The teacher told the students _____ any food into the computer room.

A. not to bring B. not bring

C. don't bring D. bring not

【解析】A. tell sb. not to do sth. 意为“告诉某人不要做某事”, 因此答案为 A。

() 5. (眉山) Just before the Chinese class, I suddenly realized that I forgot _____ my Chinese text book.

A. bring B. bringing

C. and bring D. to bring

【解析】D. forget to do 表示“忘了去做”, 动作还没发生。forget doing 表示“忘了已经做过了”。根据题意, 我突然意识到我忘了带语文书。故选 D。

() 6. (广州) —We don't have much homework this weekend. Shall we go out together? —OK. What about _____ a movie?

A. to see B. seeing

C. to see D. sees

【解析】B. 非谓语动词。介词后加动词的-ing 形式, 因此答案为 B。

() 7. (达州) Why not _____ an English club to practice _____ English?

A. to join; to speak

B. join; speaking

C. join; to speak

D. to join; speaking

【解析】B. 本题考查的是 why not + 动词原形结构。practice 后跟动名词, 故答案应选 B。

() 8. (兰州) —What are on show in the



museum?

—Some photos _____ by the children of Yushu, Qinghai.

- A. have been taken B. were taken
C. are taken D. taken

【解析】D。根据问句可知答语强调某物而不是动作，故选过去分词作定语。

() 9. (河北) More and more young people are trying to do something _____ the old.

- A. served B. to serve
C. serve D. serves

【解析】B。本题考查动词不定式表目的用法。句意：越来越多的年轻人开始尝试做一些事来为老年人服务。

() 10. (江西) —Why did you buy a radio?
—_____ English.

- A. Learn B. Learning
C. To learn D. Be learning

【解析】C。本题考查动词不定式表目的用法。

() 11. (南京) —Do you know Neil Armstrong?
—Yes, He is the first man _____ on the moon.

- A. walk B. walks
C. to walk D. walked

【解析】C。本题考查动词不定式作定语用法。在有 the first, the last 等序数词和最高

级修饰的名词后面，一般用动词不定式做定语。

() 12. (宿迁) —Mum, can I have something _____ ?

—Oh, dear. You can only drink some water. There is _____ in the kitchen.

- A. to drink; nothing else
B. drinking; something else
C. to eat; something else
D. eating; nothing else

【解析】A。前一句考查动词不定式作定语，后一句考查 else 作定语后置的用法。

() 13. (无锡) Xiao Li said she would rather _____ join us.

- A. did not B. to not
C. not D. not to

【解析】C。本题考查 would rather not do 的用法。

() 14. (通化) The woman made his son _____ finally after she told him some jokes.

- A. laughed B. to laugh
C. laugh D. laughing

【解析】C。本题考查 make 的用法，make sb. do sth.，即 make 后面常跟不带 to 的动词不定式作宾语补足语。



实战模拟

一、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

() 1. It's too late. Why _____ now?

- A. not to go B. not going
C. not go D. don't go

() 2. Linda was very sorry for being late. But the teacher's smile made her _____ better.

- A. feel B. to feel
C. feeling D. feels

() 3. Meimei went _____ Kate with her Chinese.

- A. help B. to help
C. helped D. helping

() 4. It is better to teach a man to fish than _____ him fish.

- A. giving B. to give
C. gives D. gave

() 5. The policeman warned the young man _____ after drinking.

- A. never to drive B. to never drive
C. never driving D. never drive

() 6. What do you think is the best way _____ the wild animals?

- A. protecting B. to protect

- C. protected D. protect
- () 7. Would you please _____ drop your shoes on the floor at night?
A. not to B. not
C. don't D. won't
- () 8. Her wish is _____ a famous singer.
A. become B. became
C. becomes D. to become
- () 9. Our monitor is always ready _____ others.
A. help B. helps
C. to help D. helping
- () 10. You'd better _____ upstairs and tell the children _____ make so much noise.
A. go; not to B. go; don't
C. to go; not to D. to go; don't
- () 11. Have you decided _____ for your holidays?
A. go where B. where to go
C. to go where D. where go
- () 12. —Could you give us a hand, please?
—Sure. What would you like me ____?
A. do B. does
C. to do D. doing
- () 13. —Remember _____ him about it before he goes away.
—Sure, I will.
A. tell B. to tell
C. telling D. to telling
- () 14. I'm hungry. Get me something _____.
A. eat B. to eat
C. eating D. ate
- () 15. There isn't any difference between the two. I really don't know _____.
A. where to choose
B. which to choose
C. to choose what
D. choose which
- () 16. —My brother's ill in hospital.
—I'm sorry _____ that.
A. hear B. hearing
- C. heard D. to hear
- () 17. I'm very happy _____ to speak here.
A. to be asked B. to ask
C. asking D. having asked
- () 18. I'm sorry I forgot _____ you stamps.
A. buying B. to buy
C. buy D. not to buy
- () 19. Mr Hu has enough time _____ the job in two days.
A. finish B. to finish
C. finishing D. finished
- () 20. She wanted _____ earlier that day.
A. to get home B. got home
C. get home D. getting home
- () 21. When I'm tired, I enjoy _____.
A. listening B. listening to
C. to hear D. hearing
- () 22. The Great Green Wall will stop the wind from _____ the earth away.
A. blow B. to blow
C. blowing D. blew
- () 23. _____ is bad for our health.
A. Doing eye exercises
B. Go to bed early
C. Eating too much
D. Taking a walk
- () 24. Are you going to the party _____ at Li Ping's home this Friday evening?
A. held B. hold
C. to hold D. to be held
- () 25. Jenny is interested in _____ in her free time.
A. listened to the radio
B. reading magazines
C. watch TV
D. plays tennis
- () 26. My grandfather is used _____ a hat in winter.
A. to wear B. for wearing



- C. wearing D. to wearing
- () 27. She should do her homework now.
But she doesn't feel like _____ it.
A. does B. do
C. doing D. to do
- () 28. Mr Fisher kept on _____ the players
_____ team work.
A. asking; to remember
B. asking; remembering
C. to ask; remembering
D. to ask; to remember
- () 29. The doctor saved a _____ girl
yesterday.
A. dead B. death
C. die D. dying
- () 30. When I _____ the classroom, the
students had finished _____ the
classroom.
A. reached; cleaning
B. got; cleaning
C. came; cleaned
D. arrived in; to clean

二、填空

用括号内所给单词的正确形式填空。

- The baby was made _____ (laugh) by Tom.
- It's not polite _____ (shake) hands with people by left hand.
- She is too ill _____ (go) to school.
- She often makes us _____ (do) a lot of homework after school.
- Her hobby is _____ (make) model planes.
- It's time for us _____ (go) to work.
- I like _____ (read) English in the morning.
- It took me two hours _____ (clean) the room.
- It's easy _____ (finish) the work in an hour.

- He has gone to do some _____ (shop).
- Tom hopes _____ (visit) the Great Wall one day.
- Thank you for _____ (come) to see me.
- It's bad manners _____ (shout) in public.
- _____ (smoke) too much is bad for your health.
- His father agreed _____ (pay) \$4,000 for the car.
- _____ (hear) the bad news, they are very sad.
- Let me _____ (tell) you how _____ (do) it.
- Something is wrong with my bike. I'm going to have it _____ (repair).

三、完成句子

根据所给汉语的内容, 用英语完成下列句子。

- Stop _____ (谈话), please. It's time _____ (上课).
- Can you tell me _____ (在哪里能买到这本书)?
- I want _____ (看) a film.
- Did you see her _____ (放风筝) just now?
- It's very important _____ (学) a foreign language well.
- The runner fell, but he quickly got up and went on _____ (跑).
- Remember _____ (关) the lights when you leave the classroom.
- I spent two hours _____ (做) my homework last night.
- I'm thirsty. I'd like something _____ (喝).
- I don't know the man _____ (姓) Li.

第10章 宾语从句

宾语从句是初中英语语法的重要内容，几乎每年的中考都有对宾语从句的考查。考查的重点一般都集中在以下几个方面：(1) 连接词；(2) 语序；(3) 时态；(4) 否定转移。宾语从句的考查主要是在单项选择、完形填空、句型转换、翻译等题型中。



考点透视

考点1 连词 that

引导宾语从句的连词 that 通常可以省略，但在以下情况下 that 不能省略。

(1) that 引导的宾语从句作介词 except 的宾语时。如：

I know nothing about him except that he is from the south. 对他我一无所知，只知道他是南方人。

(2) 当一个谓语动词带两个或两个以上的 that 引导的宾语从句时，只有第一个可省略。如：

He said (that) French was the most beautiful tongue in the world, and that we must keep it among us and never forget it. 他说，法语是世界上最美的语言，我们必须坚持说法语，永远也不要忘记它。

考点2 从属连词 if/whether

(1) 宾语从句是肯定句时，whether 与 if 可互换；但 whether 常和 or not 连用，if 一般不与 or not 连用。宾语从句是否定句时，一般用 if 引导。如：

I don't know if/whether I should tell you. 我不知道是否应告诉你。

I wonder whether it is true or not. 不知这是不是真的。

I don't care if it doesn't rain. 下不下雨我不在乎。

(2) 用 if 引导宾语从句如果会引起歧义，应避免使用 if 而用 whether。试比较：

Please let me know if you want to go. 如果你想说的话，请告诉我一声。(此时 if 从句是条件状语从句) / 请告诉我你是否想去。(此时 if 从句是宾语从句)

Please let me know whether you want to go. 请告诉我你是否想去。

(3) 作介词宾语时，只能用 whether，不能用 if。如：

Everything depends on whether we have enough experience. 一切都取决于我们是否有足够的经验。

考点3 宾语从句的语序

宾语从句的语序必须是陈述语序，即连接词+主语+谓语+其他成分。如：

Do you know why winter is colder than summer? 你知道为什么冬季比夏季冷吗？

I believe that they will come soon. 我相信他们很快就会来了。

He asked me whether I was from China. 他问我是不是来自中国。

They wanted to know what they can do for us. 他们想知道他们能为我们做些什么。

考点4 宾语从句的时态

宾语从句与主句的时态要相互呼应。主句是现在时，从句可用任何所需要的时态。主句是过去时，从句要用表示过去的相应的时态。但如果从句中有明确表示过去的时间状语，则从句应用一般过去时，不用过去完成时；如从句表达的是客观规律或真理时，用一般现在时。如：

He said he had finished his studies when the war broke out. 他说战争爆发时，他已经完成了学业。

He said he would spend his holiday in Dalian. 他说他将在大连度假。

She said that the earth moves around the sun. 她说地球围绕太阳转。

考点5 宾语从句与形式宾语 it

如果宾语从句后有宾语补足语, 则用 it 作形式宾语, 而把宾语从句后置。其句型为: 主语 + 谓语 + it + 补足语 + 宾语从句。如:

We think it important that we should master at least one foreign language. 我们认为至少要掌握一门外语, 这很重要。

They found it pleasant that they worked with us Chinese. 他们发现与我们中国人一起工作很愉快。

考点6 宾语从句的否定转移

在 think, consider, believe, suppose, expect, guess, imagine 等动词后的宾语从句, 有时谓语尽管是否定的意思, 却不用否定形式, 而将 think 等动词变为否定形式。如:

I don't think you are right. 我认为你错了。

I don't believe they have finished their work yet. 我相信他们还未完成他们的工作。

I don't suppose he cares, does he? 我想他不在意, 是吗?



真题再现

() 1. (深圳) —Do you know _____ buy the book *Harry Potter*?

—The book is _____ popular that you can buy it at any bookshop.

A. where can I; so

B. where can I; such

C. where I can; so

D. where I can; such

【解析】C。此句是宾语从句, 其语序应为陈述句语序。popular 是形容词, 要用 so 来修饰, 故选 C。

() 2. (河北) Your T-shirt is so cool. Could you tell me _____?

A. where you buy it

B. where do you buy it

C. where you bought it

D. where did you buy it

【解析】C。此句是宾语从句, 其语序应为陈述句语序, 可排除 B, D。由句意可判断时态应为过去时, 故选 C。

() 3. (武汉) —Do you know the man under the tree?

—Sorry, I don't know _____.

A. how is he

B. what is he

C. who he is

D. where he is

【解析】C。句意: 一你认识树底下那个男

的吗? 一对不起, 我不知道他是谁。从句意可知, 只能选 C 项。

() 4. (晋江) —Would you please tell me _____?

—At 10: 00 this evening.

A. when will the train leave

B. when the train will leave

C. when does the train leave

【解析】B。根据答语可知, 问“你能告诉我火车几点出发吗?”, 定语从句应用陈述句语序。由于主句是一般现在时, 从句不受限制, 故选择 B。

() 5. (哈尔滨) —You speak good English. Could you tell me _____?

—You'd better communicate with others in English as much as possible.

A. how can I improve my English

B. how I can improve my English

C. how could I improve my English

【解析】B。根据宾语从句的语法规则, 从句中要用陈述句语序, 故选 B。

() 6. (镇江) —That actor often joins in different activities in Beijing. Do you know _____?

—For 5 years.

- A. how soon he will come back
B. how long he has stayed there
C. when he went there
D. when he will come here

【解析】B。根据答语可以判断出上一句是在问多久了。故选择 B。

- () 7. (重庆) —David, look at the man in white over there. Can you tell me _____?

—He is a doctor.

- A. Who is he B. who he is
C. what is he D. what he is

【解析】D。根据答语可知是问职业，故排除 A 和 B。宾语从句用陈述句语序，所以答案选 D。

- () 8. (深圳) —Could you tell me _____?
He is wanted by the head teacher.

—Sorry, I've no idea. But he _____ here just now.

- A. where Tim was; was
B. where is Tim; was
C. where Tim is; was
D. where Tim is; is



实战模拟

一、填空

用适当的连词填空。

- I believe _____ they will come back on time.
- Can you tell me _____ you've seen this man?
- This is not my cup. Do you know _____ it is?
- The bags on the floor are the same. I don't know _____ one is mine.
- He doesn't know _____ the headmaster is.
- He asked his wife _____ the socks were.
- Please tell me _____ you got here.
- She said _____ if I was tired I had better sit down.

【解析】C。根据宾语从句要用陈述句语序，可排除 B 项；而根据第一空的后一句可知是问现在在哪里，故排除 A 项；又由 just now 可知后半句用过去时。

- () 9. (福州) —Excuse me, could you tell me _____?

—Sorry, sir. I wasn't there at that time.

- A. how did the accident happen
B. how the accident happened
C. how does the accident happen
D. how the accident happens

【解析】B。根据宾语从句要用陈述句语序，又根据答句中的 “I wasn't there at that time.” 可知要用一般过去时，故答案选 B。

- () 10. (兰州) I really want to know _____.

- A. what is wrong with my brother
B. how will he go to Beijing tomorrow
C. if had he bought that car
D. where did he go yesterday

【解析】A。宾语从句要用陈述句语序，这里 what 疑问词作句子主语，故本题答案选 A。

9. Could you show me _____ you read this word?

10. My brother noticed _____ his bike was broken.

11. I want to know _____ she is so happy.

二、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. —Do you know _____ last night?
—Sorry, I don't know. But I think he should go to bed early because he will have an English exam this afternoon.
- A. when he goes to bed
B. when he went to bed
C. when did he go to bed
D. when does he go to bed



- () 2. —What did your manager say just now?
—He asked me _____ this morning.
A. how did Sam come to the company
B. when Sam got to the company
C. why was Sam late for company
D. that Sam came to the company
- () 3. We know little about the young lady except _____ you told us.
A. what B. that
C. how D. /
- () 4. —I wonder _____ without water.
—About a week.
A. how long man can live
B. how long can man live
C. when man can live
D. when can man live
- () 5. I didn't understand _____, so I wanted him to explain it.
A. what he says
B. what does he say
C. what he said
D. what did he say
- () 6. My father said _____ that book is very useful.
A. / B. if
C. that D. why
- () 7. Lily couldn't find out _____, so she gave it to the policeman.
A. whose bag it was
B. what bag was it
C. it was which bag
D. where the bag was
- () 8. My teacher told me _____.
A. it was never too late to learn

- B. if it is never too late to learn
C. that it is never too late to learn
D. that is it never too late to learn
- () 9. —_____ his novel are so popular?
—Because it is very interesting.
A. Do you think why
B. Why you think
C. Why do you think
D. What do you think
- () 10. —Could you tell me how long _____ the MP4?
—A month.
A. I can borrow B. can I borrow
C. I can keep D. can I keep

三、完成句子

根据所给汉语的内容，用英语完成下列句子（每空一词）。

1. 我不知道你对不对。

I don't know _____
_____ or not.

2. 玛丽说她有重要的事情要做。

Mary said that she _____
_____ to do.

3. 我认为南希赢不了比赛。

I _____
the match.

4. 经理已明确指出你的计划不能实现。

The manager made _____
_____ your plan _____ impossible.

5. 这位母亲不知道她的儿子在做什么。

The mother doesn't know _____
_____.

第 11 章 反意疑问句

反意疑问句的考查涉及面广，但是只要我们认真分析便可得知中考主要考查一些特殊的代词作主语、句中含有否定意义的词以及一些特殊句型，如 there be 句型，let's...，let us 和祈使句等。考查题型主要为单项选择、句型转换等。



考点透视

考点 1 陈述句谓语是行为动词的一般现在时时，附加疑问句用 **do/don't** 或 **does/doesn't** + 主语

例句：Your brother lives in Shanghai, doesn't he? 你的哥哥住在上海，不是吗？

Both of your parents work in the hospital, don't they? 你的父母都在医院工作，不是吗？

考点 2 陈述句谓语是行为动词的一般过去时时，附加疑问句用 **did/didn't** + 主语

例句：Simon and I didn't celebrate our birthdays last year, did we? 我和西蒙去年没有庆祝我们的生日，是吧？

考点 3 陈述句谓语是行为动词的完成时时，附加疑问句用 **have** 的适当形式 + 主语

例句：The workers have finished their work, haven't they? 工人们已经完成了他们的工作，不是吗？

The runner hasn't reached the end, has he? 那个赛跑的人还没有到终点，是吧？

考点 4 陈述部分是 **there be** 结构时，附加疑问句部分用相应谓语动词的适当形式 + **there**

例句：There are some children in the room, aren't there? 房间里有一些孩子，不是吗？

There will be a volleyball match in our school, won't there? 我们学校将有一场排球赛，不是吗？

考点 5 陈述部分有 **no, never, hardly, seldom, few, little, nothing** 等否定词或半否定词时，附加疑问句用肯定形式

例句：Nobody wants to go there, does he? 没有人想去那儿，不是吗？

They have never been to New York, have they? 他们从没有去过纽约，是吧？

考点 6 陈述部分出现否定词缀（前缀或后缀）时，附加疑问句仍用否定结构

例句：The man was very unhappy, wasn't he? 这个男人非常不开心，是吧？

The boy is too careless, isn't he? 这个男孩太粗心了，是吧？

考点 7 含 **must** 的反意疑问句

(1) 陈述部分含有情态动词 **must** + be 表示推测时，附加疑问句部分用 **isn't/aren't** + 主语，不可用 **mustn't**；如果 **must** 表示“必须”的含义时，附加疑问句部分则用 **needn't** + 主语。如：

The bag must be yours, isn't it? 这个包一定是你的，不是吗？

Her mother must go home, needn't she? 她的母亲必须回家了，不是吗？



(2) 当陈述部分有 **mustn't** 表示“禁止”时, 附加疑问句一般用 **must**。如:

You **mustn't** smoke in the bus, **must** you? 你不能在公共汽车上抽烟, 是吧?

考点 8 祈使句的反意疑问句

(1) 当陈述部分为祈使句时, 附加疑问句一般用 **will/won't/would** you。如:

John, read the text for us, **will** you? 约翰, 给我们读一下课文, 好吗?

(2) 当祈使句为 **let's...** 结构时, 附加疑问句部分用 **shall we**; 如果是 **let us...** 结构, 则用 **will/won't** you。如:

Let's keep in touch, **shall** we? 我们保持联系, 好吗?

Let us drink some wine, **will** you? 让我们喝点葡萄酒, 好吗?

考点 9 陈述部分的主语是 **everything, nothing, anything** 或 **something** 等不定代词时, 附加疑问句的主语要用代词 **it**

例句: Something is wrong with the machine, **isn't** it? 机器有问题, 不是吗?

考点 10 当陈述部分为 “**I think/believe/guess/suppose**+宾语从句” 时, 附加疑问句应与宾语从句保持一致, 并根据主句选用肯定或否定形式

例句: I suppose you ride yourself, **don't** you? 我猜想你自己会骑马, 不是吗?

I don't think she knows my name, **does** she? 我认为她不知道我的名字, 是吧?

特别记忆 当 **think** 等动词的主语不是第一人称, 这时, 附加疑问句的助动词和人称代词要与主句保持一致。如:

She thinks she can get there on time, **doesn't** she? 她认为她能准时到达那儿, 是吧?

考点 11 当陈述部分主语是从句、不定式(短语)、动词-ing 形式时, 附加疑问句的主语应该用 **it**

例句: What he said is very important, **isn't** it? 他说的话很重要, 是吧?

考点 12 陈述部分的主谓是 **I am** 时, 附加疑问句则用 **aren't I**

例句: I am an honest man, **aren't** I? 我是个老实人, 是吧?

考点 13 陈述部分的动词是 **used to** 时, 附加疑问句可用 **used** 或 **did**+主语

例句: The Smiths used to live in the countryside, **usedn't / didn't** they? 史密斯一家过去住在乡下, 是吗?

He didn't use/used to tell lies, **did** he? 他过去不说谎的, 是吗?

考点 14 含有 **ought to** 的反意疑问句, 陈述部分是肯定的, 附加疑问部分用 **shouldn't / oughtn't** +主语。正式文体用 **should/ought** +主语+**not** 形式

例句: He ought to know what to do, **oughtn't** he? / **shouldn't** he? 他应该知道要做什么, 不是吗?

考点 15 陈述部分的谓语是 **wish**, 附加疑问部分要用 **may** +主语

例句: I wish to have a word with you, **may** I? 我希望能和你说话, 可以吗?

考点 16 陈述部分有 **had better** 时, 附加疑问句部分用 **hadn't**+主语

例句: You had better learn by heart as many sentence patterns as you can, **hadn't** you? 你最好尽可能多背句型, 不是吗?

考点 17 含 **have** 的反意疑问句

(1) 陈述部分的谓语动词是 **have** (当“拥有”讲时), 附加疑问句可用 **have** 或 **do** 的相应形式。

如:

You have a nice house, haven't/don't you? 你有一栋漂亮的房子, 不是吗?

(2) 但如果陈述句是否定形式时, 附加疑问句中动词的选择则由陈述句中的动词形式而定。

如:

He hasn't a house of his own, has he? 他没有自己的房子, 是吗?

He doesn't have a house of his own, does he? 他没有自己的房子, 是吗?

(3) 如果陈述句中的动词 have 表示“经历; 遭受; 得到; 吃”的意思时, 则附加疑问句中的动词用 do 的相应形式。如:

You often have headaches, don't you? 你经常头痛, 不是吗?

考点 18 陈述部分为主从复合句时, 其附加疑问句一般应与主句保持一致, 但陈述部分为 **I think /believe/ suppose that...** 等时, 附加疑问句通常与从句保持一致 (注意否定的转移)

例句: She said that I did it, didn't she? 她说是我干的, 不是吗?

I think that he is wrong, isn't he? 我认为他错了, 不是吗?

I don't suppose he will come, will he? 我想他不会来了, 是吗?



真题再现

() 1. (深圳) —Let's go to the zoo by taxi,
_____?

—Maybe we can go there _____.

It's not far.

A. won't you; on foot

B. won't you; by foot

C. shall we; by foot

D. shall we; on foot

【解析】D。当祈使句是 let's... 结构时, 附加疑问句部分用 shall we。on foot 的意思是“走路”。

() 2. (杭州) Alice had a wonderful time
yesterday, _____?

A. hadn't she B. wasn't she

C. didn't she D. wouldn't she

【解析】C。反意疑问句, 前肯后否, 时态要一致, 故选 C。

() 3. (广东) E-mail is very popular today.
People seldom write letters now,
_____?

A. did they B. do they

C. didn't they D. don't they

【解析】B。主句中有 seldom 这个否定词,

所以后面要用肯定式。

() 4. (齐齐哈尔) There is no important
information in the newspaper, _____?

A. isn't there

B. is it

C. is there

【解析】C。there be 句型中有表示否定的词 no, 故反意疑问句用 is there, 故答案选 C。

() 5. (孝感) Bob, you watched the fashion
show last night, _____?

A. weren't you B. didn't you

C. haven't you D. won't you

【解析】B。由前面主句是一般过去时的肯定句可知, 反意疑问句用 didn't you, 故答案选 B。

() 6. (贵港) —It's a nice day, isn't it?

—_____. Let's go hiking in the
mountain.

A. Yes, it does

B. No, it isn't

C. It doesn't matter

D. Yes, it is

【解析】D。根据答句中的“让我们去山上



徒步旅行”可知答复是“Yes, it is”。

- () 7. (柳州) I don't think she has gone to Beijing, _____?
A. has she B. hasn't she
C. do I D. don't I

【解析】A。当陈述部分为“I think+宾语从句”时，附加疑问句应与宾语从句保持一致，并根据主句选用肯定句或否定句。故答案选A。

- () 8. (益阳) Nothing is difficult if you put your heart into it, _____?
A. aren't they
B. isn't it
C. is it

【解析】C。陈述部分有nothing这样的否定词时，附加疑问句用肯定形式，故答案选C。



实战模拟

一、单项选择

从下列各题所给的A、B、C和D四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. Have some more apples, _____?
A. shall you B. have you
C. will you D. can you
- () 2. I don't think he did such a stupid thing last night, _____?
A. do I B. could he
C. did he D. has he
- () 3. There's not much news about the missing mountain climbers in today's newspaper, _____?
A. isn't it B. is it
C. isn't there D. is there
- () 4. —Why is Tom absent?
—He must be sick, _____?
A. isn't he B. must he
C. is he D. mustn't he
- () 5. What a terrible tsunami (海啸), _____?
A. aren't they B. are they
C. isn't it D. is it

- () 9. (朝阳) —You don't come from England, do you?
—_____. I come from America.
How do you know that?
A. No, I do B. Yes, I do
C. Yes, I don't D. No, I don't

【解析】D。反意疑问句要根据事实回答。根据答句中的“I come from America.”可知要用No来回答。

- () 10. (新疆) Don't forget to give Polly some food and change her water, _____?
A. shall we B. will you
C. won't you D. do you

【解析】B。当陈述部分为祈使句时，附加疑问句一般用will you，故答案选B。

- () 6. It's the first time that she has been to the United States, _____?
A. isn't she B. isn't it
C. hasn't she D. hasn't it
- () 7. Nowadays in China some officers are unfit for their positions, _____?
A. are they B. aren't they
C. don't they D. do they
- () 8. It hardly snows in Shenzhen, _____?
A. doesn't it B. does it
C. snows it D. snow it
- () 9. Protecting the South China tiger from dying out takes a long time, _____?
A. doesn't it B. don't they
C. does it D. do they
- () 10. You'd better find some information about Nike's “Chamber of Fear” advertisement, _____?
A. wouldn't you B. had you
C. hadn't you D. should you
- () 11. Most students used to listen to their teachers in class and completely obey

their teachers, _____?

A. used they B. weren't they

C. didn't they D. did they

- () 12. When the disaster struck, many people had no time to escape being killed, _____?

A. didn't they B. did they

C. did it D. didn't it

- () 13. I am very excited to know S. H. E. is going to sing at the CCTV Spring Festival Soirée (春节联欢晚会), _____?

A. aren't I B. am not I

C. aren't you D. are you

- () 14. I wish all the Chinese people to live a happy life forever, _____?

A. don't I B. can I

C. may I D. may you

- () 15. Something about stopping the strike will have to be done, _____?

A. won't it B. will it

C. has it D. does it

二、完成句子

完成下列反意疑问句 (每空一词)。

1. Don't talk in class, _____?

2. He doesn't teach English, _____?

3. The girl went to school late, _____?

4. I don't think he is a businessman, _____?

5. There is little water in the bottle, _____?

6. Let us have a good rest, _____?

7. Few students in our class know the answer, _____?

8. Lucy's never late for school, _____?

9. Jim usually goes to school by bike, _____?

10. He hardly finishes his work on time, _____?

第12章 定语从句

根据对定语从句部分中考试题的分析可知,今后该部分仍将是重点考查点之一。其考查重点为:各个关系代词和关系副词的具体用法,其中以 that 与 which 引导的定语从句、who, whom 与 whose 引导的定语从句为主。定语从句的考查主要是在单项选择、翻译、句型转换、完形填空等题型中。



考点透视

考点 1 who 和 whom

用关系代词 who 或 whom 时,定语从句修饰的名词(先行词)指人。who 在从句中作主语或宾语,作宾语时可省略;而 whom 只能作动词或介词的宾语,且介词置于关系代词之前时只能用 whom,不可用 who。如:

The boy who is playing football on the ground is my brother. 在操场上踢足球的男孩是我兄弟。

This is the girl (whom/who) our teacher likes best. 这是我们老师最喜欢的女孩。

The professor with whom she went to Canada last week is very famous. 上个星期与她一起去加拿大的教授非常有名。

考点 2 whose

关系代词 whose 既可指人也可指物,在定语从句中作定语。如:

The building whose windows face to the south is our school. 窗口朝南的那幢大楼是我们学校。

考点 3 which

关系代词 which 指物,在从句中作主语或宾语,作宾语时可省略。如:

A plane is a machine which can fly. 飞机是一种能飞的机器。

My uncle works in the factory (which) we visited yesterday. 我叔叔在昨天我们参观过的那个工厂工作。

考点 4 that

关系代词 that 既可指人又可指物,在从句中作主语或宾语,作宾语时可省略。若介词置于关系代词之前,只能用 whom 指人,which 指物,不可用 that。如:

The student that/who is performing on the stage is Mrs Wang's daughter. 那个正在台上表演的学生是王太太的女儿。

I've eaten the bread (that/which) he gave to me. 我已经吃了他给我的面包。

She knew the teacher (who/whom/that) we met yesterday. 她认识我们昨天见到的那位老师。

The man to whom you were talking just now is Tom's father. 刚才和你说话的那个男人是汤姆的父亲。

The room in which he lives is very small. 他住的房间很小。

(1) 不用 that 的情况。

① 在引导非限定性定语从句时,不能用 that。如:

The tree, which is four hundred years old, is very famous here. 这棵有四百年树龄的古树在这里很有名。(句中的 which 不能换成 that)

② 介词后不能用 that。如:

We depend on the land from which we get our food. 我们依靠土地获得食物。(from 是介词, 后面不能用 that)

(2) 只能用 that 的情况。

① 当先行词是 anything, everything, nothing (something 除外), few, all, none, little, some 等代词时, 或者是由 every, any, all, some, no, little, few, much, each 等修饰时。如:

Have you taken down everything that Mr Li has said? 你记录下李先生所说的一切了吗?

All that can be done has been done. 所有能做的都做了。

There is little that I can do for you. 我几乎不能为你做什么。

当先行词在定语从句中作宾语时, that 可以省略。如:

The doctor did everything (that) he could to save the patient. 医生竭尽全力救治病人。

当先行词指人时, 偶尔也可以用 who。如:

Any man that/who has a sense of duty won't do such a thing. 稍有责任感的人都不会做这样一件事。

② 当先行词被序数词修饰时。如:

The first place that they visited in London was the Big Ben. 他们在伦敦参观的第一个地方是大本钟。

③ 当先行词被形容词最高级修饰时。如:

This is the best film that I have seen. 这是我看过的最好看的电影。

④ 当形容词被 the very, the only, the same, the last 修饰时。如:

This is the very dictionary that I want to buy. 这正是我想买的那本词典。

After the fire in his house, the old car is the only thing that he owned. 他的房子发生火灾后, 这辆旧车是他唯一的财物了。

当先行词指人时, 偶尔也可以用 who。如:

Wang Hua is the only person in our school who will attend the meeting. 王华是我们学校唯一一个将参加这次会议的人。

⑤ 当先行词前面有 who, which 等疑问代词时。如:

Who is the man that is standing there? 站在那儿的那个男人是谁?

Which is the T-shirt that fits me most? 哪一件 T 恤是最适合我的?

⑥ 当先行词既有人, 也有动物或者物体时。如:

Can you remember the scientist and his theory that we have learned? 你还记得我们曾学过的那位科学家和他的理论吗?

考点 5 when, where, why 的用法

关系副词 when, where, why 的含义相当于“介词 + which”结构, 因此常常和“介词 + which”结构交替使用。如:

There are occasions when/on which one must yield. 任何人都有不得不屈服的时候。

Beijing is the place where/in which I was born. 北京是我的出生地。

Is this the reason why/for which he refused our offer? 这就是他拒绝我们帮助他的理由吗?



考点6 that 代替关系副词的用法

that 可以用于表示时间、地点、方式、理由的名词后取代 when, where, why 和“介词+which”。在口语中, that 常被省略。如:

His father died the year (that/when/in which) he was born. 他父亲在他出生那年去世了。

He is unlikely to find the place (that/where/in which) he lived forty years ago. 他不大可能找到他 40 年前居住过的地方。

考点7 判断关系代词与关系副词

用关系代词还是关系副词完全取决于从句中的谓语动词。若谓语动词是及物的且后面无宾语, 就必须用关系代词; 若及物动词后面有宾语或谓语动词是不及物的, 则要用关系副词。如:

This is the mountain village (which) I visited last year. 这就是我去年参观过的村庄。

I'll never forget the day (when) I first met him. 我永远不会忘记我第一次见到他的那一天。

The house where I live now was bought five years ago. 我现在住的房子是五年前买的。



真题再现

- () 1. (广州) I still remember the park _____ we first met.
A. that B. which
C. where D. when

【解析】C。句意: 我还记得我们第一次见面的那个公园。这是定语从句, 先行词 park 是地点名词, 且从句本身缺状语, 因此, 选 C。

- () 2. (杭州) You can't wake a person _____ is pretending to be asleep.
A. who B. which
C. he D. 不填

【解析】A。由题意可知, 先行词 a person 指人, 而且在从句中作主语, 应用 who, 故选 A。

- () 3. (河北) There are lots of things _____ I need to prepare before the trip.
A. who B. that
C. whom D. whose

【解析】B。此句为 that 引导的定语从句, 在从句中作 prepare 的宾语, 故选 B。

- () 4. (兰州) —Have you found the information about the famous people _____ you can use for the report?
—Not yet. I'll search some on the Internet.
A. who B. what
C. whom D. which

【解析】D。本句的先行词是 information, the famous people 是用于修饰 information 的, 故关系词用 which 修饰物, 故选 D。

- () 5. (宜宾) The TV play is about a true story _____ happened in Mianyang in 1998.
A. it B. what
C. that D. when

【解析】C。此句为限制性定语从句, 选项中只有 that 是关系代词, 作定语从句的主语, 故答案选 C。

- () 6. (兰州) I like the teacher _____ classes are very interesting and creative.
A. which B. who
C. what D. whose

【解析】D。定语从句中缺定语修饰 classes, 故选 D。

- () 7. (烟台) I've found some pictures of the most interesting places _____ you can visit during the winter holidays.
A. where B. which
C. what D. that

【解析】D。分析句子成分可知, 定语从句中 visit 缺宾语, 而且前面有形容词最高级修

饰, 故选 that。

- () 8. (漳州) —Could you tell me something about Zheng He?

—Sure. He was a Ming Dynasty explorer _____ the Chinese people are proud of?

- A. which B. whose
C. whom D. where

【解析】C。分析句子可知定语从句中 of 后缺宾语, 而且先行词 explorer 指人, 故选 C。

- () 9. (哈尔滨) Ten months has passed, but Chinese people still remember those exciting days _____ they spent during the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games.

- A. that B. who
C. when

【解析】A。这是定语从句。从句中, spent 是及物动词, 缺宾语, 而且先行词为时间 days, 故选 that。

- () 10. (锦州) —Is everything _____ we need to do _____?

—Yes. You needn't worry about it.

- A. which; has done
B. which; doing
C. that; has done
D. that; done

【解析】D。we need to do 是定语从句修饰不定代词 everything, 故填 that; 根据句意应表示被动, 而且前面有 is, 故为一般现在时态的被动语态。

- () 11. (深圳) —Do you know the boy _____ is sitting next to Peter?

—Yes. He is Peter's friend. They are celebrating his _____ birthday.

- A. who; ninth B. that; ninth
C. /; ninth D. which; ninth

【解析】A。第一个空应作主语成分, 而且先行词为人, 故排除 C 和 D; 第九应为 ninth。

- () 13. (朝阳) —What kind of music do you like?

—I like music _____ I can sing along with.

- A. who B. where
C. that D. when

【解析】C。定语从句中 sing along with 缺宾语, 而且定语从句修饰物 music, 故选 C。

- () 14. (莆田) The place _____ interested me most was Jiuzhaigou.

- A. which B. where
C. what

【解析】A。这里先行词虽然为地点, 但是从句中缺主语, 故选 A。



实战模拟

一、填空

用适当的关系代词或关系副词填空。

- This is the present _____ he gave me for my birthday.
- He talked about the teachers and schools _____ he had visited.
- There is nothing in the world _____ can frighten him.
- Is this the place _____ your father once lived?
- She wears a gold ring, _____ is very

uncommon in our class.

- He is the only person _____ saw the accident yesterday.
- Do you remember the time _____ we got lost in the park?
- This is the hospital _____ her mother works.
- The man _____ wife died last year has gone to Japan.
- Tell me the reason _____ the American lady left.



11. Allen is the girl _____ I think will succeed in the test.

12. Her parents wouldn't let her marry anyone _____ family was poor.

二、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. The man _____ our English teacher is talking to is Mr Baker.
A. he B. that
C. whom D. which
- () 2. He has forgotten the day _____ he arrived.
A. when B. where
C. that D. which
- () 3. Nobody knows the reason _____ she didn't come to the meeting.
A. that B. which
C. why D. when
- () 4. The moon is a world _____ there is no life.
A. that B. which
C. where D. why
- () 5. I hate the people _____ don't help others when they are in trouble.
A. who B. which
C. they D. where
- () 6. He still remembers the days _____ he spent with your family.
A. when B. where
C. that D. on which
- () 7. Mr White, _____ car had been stolen, came to the policeman.
A. who B. that
C. whose D. which
- () 8. There is only one thing _____ I can do.
A. what B. that
C. all D. which
- () 9. This is the first place _____ I've

ever visited.

- A. where B. in which
C. that D. which

- () 10. The place _____ interested me most was the Children's Palace.
A. which B. where
C. what D. in which
- () 11. Look out! Don't get too close to the house _____ roof is under repair.
A. whose B. which
C. of which D. what
- () 12. That is the day _____ I'll never forget.
A. which B. on which
C. in which D. when
- () 13. Do you know the man _____?
A. whom I spoke B. to who spoke
C. I spoke to D. that I spoke
- () 14. They arrived at a small house, in front of _____ stood a dog.
A. whom B. who
C. which D. that
- () 15. This computer, _____ for many years, is still useful.
A. after which I have looked
B. which I have looked after
C. that I have looked after
D. I have looked after
- () 16. I like my school, _____ is famous for its excellent facilities.
A. that B. which
C. it D. though
- () 17. The way _____ he speak is different from others.
A. which B. whose
C. what D. /
- () 18. The reason _____ he was late was _____ he failed to catch the first bus.
A. why; that

- B. that; why
C. for that; that
D. for which; what
- () 19. —Did you ask the guard _____ happened?
—Yes, he told me all _____ he knew.
A. what; that
B. what; what
C. which; which
D. that; that
- () 20. There are several research centres in China _____ a certain disease called Bird Flu is being studied.
A. which B. where
C. when D. what
- () 21. Have you asked her for the reason _____ may explain her absence?
A. which B. why
C. / D. because that
- () 22. Was _____ Bill, _____ played basketball very well, _____ helped the blind man cross the road?
A. it; that; who
B. this; who; that
C. which; that; that
D. it; who; that

三、翻译

汉译英。

1. 飞机是一种能在天上飞的机器。
2. 刚才和我一起玩的男孩来自美国。
3. 他们能做的所有的事就是等待。
4. 这就是我今天迟到的原因。
5. 英语说得好的那个女孩来自纽约。

四、改错

下面句子每题均有一处错误，找出并改正过来。

1. He paid the boy \$10 for washing ten windows, most of them hadn't been cleaned for at least a year.
2. This is the longest train which I have ever seen.
3. His cat, that was now very old, became ill and died.
4. The house in that we live is very big.
5. I've read all the books which I borrowed from the library.

第13章 并列连词和并列句

并列连词与并列句的考查内容不多，但是也不可忽略。主要考查并列连词在具体语境中的运用，因此要清楚其意义、连接主语时谓语单复数等规则。考查题型主要为单项选择、完形填空、句型转换等。



考点透视

考点1 常见的表并列关系的连词：and, nor, both... and, neither... nor, not only... but also, as well as 等

(1) and 意为“和，而且”，连接对等关系的词、短语或句子。在连接三个或三个以上词或短语时，一般在最后两者之间加 and。连接谓语时，两个动词时态要一致。如：

All the lights went out and we were left in the dark. 所有的灯都灭了，周围一片黑暗。

She and her sister-in-law work in the same company. 她和她嫂子在同一家公司工作。

(2) nor 意为“也不”，可用在 not, no, never 之后；若用在句首，句子须部分倒装。如：

I have never spoken nor written to her. 我跟她从来没说过话，也没写过信。

I never saw him again, nor did I hear from him. 我没有再见到他，也没有收到他的信。

(3) both... and... 意为“不仅……而且，……和……（两者）都”，连接两个主语时，谓语动词用复数。如：

Both he and I are satisfied with the result. 我和他对结果都很满意。

He both passed the course and enriched his knowledge. 他通过了课程的考试，还丰富了自己的知识。

(4) neither... nor... 意为“既不……也不……”，含否定意义；通常应连接两个相同性质的句子成分，但有时后一句可能省略与前一句成分相同的词。若连接两个成分作主语，其谓语通常与就近的主语保持一致。如：

He neither wrote nor telephoned. 他没有写信，也没有打电话。

Neither you nor he is wrong. 你没错，他也没错。

(5) as well as 意为“除……之外（也），既……又”，as well as 只是一个插入语，连接主语时，谓语动词要与前面的名词或代词保持人称和数的一致。如：

She as well as the other students has learned this method. 她和其他学生一样，也学会了这种方法。

(6) not only... but (also) 意为“不仅……而且”，also 还可以省略，连接两个主语时，谓语动词由邻近它的那个主语来决定。若连接其他成分，not only 放句首时，句子要部分倒装。如：

Not only did he speak English well, but he spoke Japanese more easily. 他不但英语说得好，就连日语也讲得轻松自如。

I not only heard it but also saw it. 这事我不但听见，而且还亲眼看见了。

Not only you but also I am interested in the book. 不光是你，我也喜欢这本书。

考点2 常见的表选择关系的连词有 or, or else, otherwise, either... or..., rather than, not... but... 等

(1) or 意为“或者，否则”。在否定句中，并列的列举常用 or，而不用 and。如：

We must run, or we shall miss the train. 我们必须快跑, 不然就赶不上火车了。

I don't like singing or dancing. 我不喜欢唱歌也不喜欢跳舞。

(2) either...or... 意为“要么……要么……”, 连接两个主语时, 谓语动词与邻近它的那个主语一致。如:

Either you or he has made the mistake. 不是你, 就是他弄错了。

You either go to school, or stay at home. 你要么去上学, 要么待在家里。

考点3 常见的表转折关系的连词: but, however, nevertheless, while, whereas, yet 等

(1) but 意为“可是, 但是”, 不能与 though, although 同时出现在句中。用于否定句中, 意为“若不, 而不”。如:

I am not good at sports, but I like to watch them. 我不擅长运动, 但我喜欢看运动。

(2) while 意为“虽然, 但是”, 表示对比、让步, 表示让步时通常位于句首。如:

I like tea while she likes coffee. 我喜欢喝茶, 而她喜欢喝咖啡。

考点4 常见的表示因果关系的连词: for, so 等

(1) for 意为“因为, 由于”, 不能位于句首。如:

We rarely stay in hotels, for we can't afford it. 我们很少住旅馆, 因为我们住不起。

(2) so 意为“因此, 所以”, 表示结果, 不能和 because 同时用于一个句子中。如:

Our boss is very strict, so we have to arrive on time. 我们老板要求很严, 所以我们必须按时到。



真题再现

- () 1. (河北) Jenny, put on your coat _____ you will catch a cold.
A. but B. and
C. or D. so

【解析】C。句意为“Jenny, 穿上你的外套, 否则你会感冒的。”or 有“否则”之意。故选 C。

- () 2. (哈尔滨) To make our dreams come true, we are supposed to set goals _____ then try our best to achieve them.
A. or B. and
C. but

【解析】B。根据句意可知上下句之间的关系为顺承关系用 and。or (否则) 表示上文造成的影响, but (但是) 是对上句的转折, 均不符合上下句关系。

- () 3. (宁夏) Bob is young, _____ he knows a lot.
A. because B. so
C. but D. unless

【解析】C。根据句意可知句子是转折关系, 故答案应选 but。

- () 4. (内江) —What do you think of this

skirt ?

—It's beautiful and it fits me well,

_____ I like it very much.

- A. since B. so
C. but

【解析】B。since 既然, so 所以, but 但是。根据句意, 是因果关系, 所以答案选 B。

- () 5. (兰州) _____ Tom _____ Mary speaks good Chinese, so they can communicate with these Chinese students very well.
A. Neither; nor
B. Not only; but also
C. Both; and
D. Either; or

【解析】B。根据 so 后内容可知 Tom 和 Mary 都会说汉语, 而且根据主谓一致原则应选 B。

- () 6. (威海) Mom, my classmates are waiting outside, _____ I must go now.
A. or B. but
C. so D. though

【解析】C。根据句意表因果关系, 故选 C。



- () 7. (莆田) His hobby is _____ watching TV _____ playing the piano. It's reading books.
A. either; or

- B. both; and
C. neither; nor

【解析】C。根据后面一句可知他的爱好既不是看电视也不是弹钢琴，故选C。



实战模拟

一、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. He has been here for only a week, _____ he has few friends.
A. and B. but
C. or D. so
- () 2. Last night I went to bed late, _____ I am really tired now.
A. so B. or
C. but D. yet
- () 3. Which one is heavier, the wooden ball _____ the iron ball?
A. or B. and
C. but D. so
- () 4. Though it was cold, _____ he went out without a coat.
A. but B. when
C. because D. /
- () 5. Mr Thin is very poor, _____ he was happy.
A. and B. but
C. or D. so
- () 6. Work hard, _____ you may catch up with your classmates soon.
A. or B. but
C. and D. yet
- () 7. Tom, keep away from the fire, _____ you will get burnt.
A. and B. so
C. or D. but
- () 8. —Can you help me with my business?
—I'd like to, _____ I have a meeting to attend.
A. because B. as

- C. but D. and

- () 9. —Was the boy saved?
—No. The doctor tried their best _____ they failed.
A. and B. so
C. but D. or
- () 10. Hold on to your dreams, _____ one day they may just come true.
A. and B. but
C. so D. or

二、选择方框中适当的连词填空 (每词限用一次)

and, but, so, or, because, though, either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but also, both ... and

- Tom comes from England, _____ he can't speak Chinese well.
- Come here _____ help the old man carry the things.
- _____ he is too young, he can't dress himself.
- _____ Lucy _____ Lily come from the USA.
- He is young, _____ he knows a lot about Chinese history.
- Hurry up, _____ you will miss the early bus.
- I like _____ English _____ maths. I like history.
- _____ you _____ your sister is right.
- They are English, but they have been in China for 10 years. So they can speak _____ English _____ Chinese.
- The boy was late, _____ he got up early.

第14章 从属连词与状语从句

从属连词与状语从句为中考的必考内容之一，主要涉及连词的选择、状语从句的时态等。考查题型有单项选择、完形填空等，基本上每种题型中都有1~2小题。



考点透视

考点1 时间状语从句

(1) 时间状语从句一般不用将来时。如果主句是一般将来时、祈使句或含有将来的意味，when, before, as soon as, till/until 等引导的时间状语从句用一般现在时表示将来。如：

I'll have to turn off TV before my father comes home. 我父亲回来之前我将不得不关掉电视。

(2) when, as, while 都表示“当……的时候”。但 when 引导的时间状语从句的动作和主句的动作可以是同时发生，也可以先后发生，when 既可指时间点，也可指一段时间；用 as, while 时则强调主句和从句的动作同时发生；while 只能表示一段时间，从句须用延续性动词。如：

Be sure to phone me when you get to Canada, please. 到加拿大之后记得一定给我打个电话。

As I was walking in the street, I saw a wallet on the ground. 我走在街上时，看见地上有个钱包。

My father was reading newspapers while my mother was cooking in the kitchen. 我妈妈在厨房做饭时我爸爸正在看报纸。

(3) till 和 until 都表示“直到……为止”，主句用延续性动词，主句和从句都用肯定式；表示“直到……才”时，主句用终止性动词，从句用肯定式，主句用否定式。until 较 till 正式，until 引导的时间从句可以放在句首。如：

Go down the road till you reach the traffic light. 沿路前行直至有交通灯处。

Until he was fifty, he didn't marry. 直到50岁他才结婚。

(4) since 引导的时间状语从句常用一般过去时，其主句一般用现在完成时。如：

Tom has been in the company for two years since he left school. 汤姆自从毕业离校已经在这家公司待了两年了。

考点2 结果状语从句

结果状语从句一般由 so... that..., such... that... 等引导，从句常用 can, could 等情态动词。如：

He hurt her so badly that she had to see a doctor. 他把她伤得太重了，以致于她不得不去看医生。

特别记忆 (1) so... that... 与 such... that... 的区别是 so 后跟形容词或副词，such 后跟名词。如：

It rained so heavily that nobody could walk outside. 雨下得很大，没有人在外面走。

She is such a lovely girl that people like her very much. 她是一个很可爱的女孩，大家都很喜欢她。

(2) so... that... 引导的状语从句如果是否定意义，可以变为 too... to... 结构的简单句。如：

The box is so heavy that we can't move it. = The box is too heavy for us to move. 这盒子这么重，我们都搬不动。

考点3 条件状语从句

条件状语从句由 if, as long as 等引导。如果主句是将来时，条件状语从句用一般现在时表示将来。如：

We won't play football if it rains tomorrow. 如果明天下雨，我们将不会踢足球。

考点 4 让步状语从句

(1) as 引导让步状语从句时, 常用倒装语序, 倒装的成分常是形容词、名词、分词、副词或动词。若倒装的是单数名词时, 其前不加冠词。如:

Clever as he is, he doesn't study well. 尽管他很聪明, 但是他学习成绩不好。

Hard as I tried, I was unable to make much progress. 尽管我已经很努力了, 但是我还是不能取得很大的进步。

Child as he is, he knows a great deal. 虽然他只是一个孩子, 但他懂得很多。

(2) although/though 不能与 but 用在同一个句子中, 两者只能取其一。

考点 5 原因状语从句

原因状语从句由 because, as, since 等引导。because 不能和 so 用在同一个句子中。如:

David is at home because he has a bad cold. 戴维在家里, 因为他得了重感冒。

考点 6 比较状语从句

通常考查搭配 as... as..., not as/so... as... 等引导。如:

I know you better than he does. 比起他来我和你更熟。

This story is as interesting as that one (is). 这个故事和那个故事一样有趣。



真题再现

- () 1. (安徽) Bob promises to join in the football match _____ he has to help his parents on the farm.

A. if B. as
C. unless D. when

【解析】C。句子前半部分意思是 Bob 许诺要加入足球队, 后面是他必须帮助他父母, 因此, 需要连词“如果不, 除非”。

- () 2. (河北) Peter likes reading a newspaper _____ he is having breakfast.

A. until B. while
C. because D. though

【解析】B。句意为“Peter 喜欢在吃早饭的时候看报纸”。while 意为“当……时候”。故选 B。

- () 3. (广州) The teacher speaks very loudly _____ all the students can hear her.

A. so that B. because
C. since D. when

【解析】A。句意为: 老师大声说话是为了让所有的学生都能听到。so that 意为“以至于, 以便于”, 故选 A。

- () 4. (宜昌) —So you were in the super-

market _____ you heard a strange sound, right?

—That's true. I ran out as quickly as possible.

A. when B. while
C. then D. which

【解析】A。主要考查 when 和 while 的区别。when 既可以指一段时间, 也可以指时间点, 而 while 只能指一段时间, 本题表达的是时间点, 故选 A。

- () 5. (宜宾) I don't have to introduce him to you _____ you know the boy.

A. until B. unless
C. since D. but

【解析】C。until 直到; unless 除非; since 既然; but 但是。根据句意只能选 C。

- () 6. (重庆) Jane, please turn off the lights _____ you leave the classroom.

A. after B. before
C. until D. but

【解析】B。根据句意可知是在离开教室前关掉灯, 故选 B。



实战模拟

一、填空

用 until, if, as, because, though, since, so... that, no matter, such... that 填空。

1. He must be ill _____ he is absent today.
2. He is _____ a young boy _____ he can't go to school.
3. He was _____ tired _____ he couldn't go on working.
4. _____ the story is short and there are no new words in it, it is difficult to understand.
5. We're leaving for Shenzhen _____ it is fine tomorrow.
6. Always do to the others _____ you would be done by.
7. I didn't manage to do it _____ you had explained how.
8. _____ where I am I will be thinking of you.
9. I haven't heard from her _____ she left home.

二、单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. —Mary, turn off the water _____ you are brushing your teeth.
—Sorry, I'll do it at once.
A. until B. while
C. during D. as
- () 2. He'll send us a message as soon as he _____ in Shenzhen.
A. is arriving B. will arrive
C. arrived D. arrives
- () 3. I am not sure if you _____ in the exam, but you'll do better if you _____ harder.
A. succeed; work
B. succeed; will work
C. will succeed; work
D. will succeed; will work
- () 4. Newton was playing under an apple

tree _____ an apple fell onto his head.

- A. when B. while
C. after D. before
 - () 5. Susan will not arrive at the airport on time _____ she hurries up.
A. once B. if
C. when D. unless
 - () 6. —Hurry up. The bus is coming.
—Wait a minute. Don't cross the street _____ the traffic lights are green.
A. after B. until
C. while D. since
 - () 7. He was told that it would be at least three more months _____ he could recover and return to work.
A. when B. before
C. since D. that
 - () 8. Please remind me _____ he said he was going. I may be in time to see him off.
A. where B. when
C. how D. what
- ### 三、完成句子
- 根据所给汉语的内容, 用英语完成下列句子。
1. _____ (已有很长时间了) we knew each other.
 2. I have kept that photo _____ (我能看到的地方) every day, as it reminds me of my university days in London.
 3. _____ (没过多久) we met again.
 4. You may stay here _____ (只要你保持安静).
 5. He interrupted me _____ (我还没来得及说话).
 6. Don't leave the light on _____ (当你不在房间时).
 7. He contacted us _____ (他一到上海).

第15章 主谓一致

主谓一致为每年中考的重点考查内容，其考查范围涉及：主谓一致的语法一致原则、整体一致原则、就近一致原则、意义一致原则、附加原则等的运用，尤其是一些特殊连接词连接主语의考查。考查题型主要有单项选择、完形填空、用所给词的正确形式填空、翻译等。



考点透视

考点1 单数名词（代词），不可数名词作主语时，谓语用单数形式，复数名词（代词）作主语，谓语用复数形式

例句：The desk is Tom's. 这张桌子是汤姆的。

Some water is in the bottle. 瓶子里有一些水。

The students are playing football on the playground. 学生们正在操场上踢足球。

考点2 many a + 单数名词作主语，意义虽为“许多”，但谓语要用单数形式

例句：Many a student has been to Shanghai. 许多学生到过上海。

考点3 more than one + 单数名词作主语，谓语用单数

例句：More than one student has ever been to Beijing. 不止一个学生曾经去过北京。

考点4 表示时间、价格、重量、数目、长度、数学运算等的词或短语作主语时，这些通常作一个整体概念，谓语用单数形式

例句：Two months is a long holiday. 两个月是一个长假。

Twenty pounds isn't so heavy. 20 英镑并不太重。

Ten miles isn't a long distance. 10 英里并不是一段很长的距离。

Five minus four is one. 5 减 4 等于 1。

考点5 主语是 each/every + 单数名词 + and (each/every) + 单数名词时，谓语动词用单数

例句：Each boy and each girl has got a seat. 每个男孩和女孩都有一个座位。

Every man and every woman is at work. 每个男人和女人都在工作。

考点6 one and a half + 复数名词作主语，谓语动词用单数形式

例句：One and a half hours is enough. 一个半小时足够了。

考点7 动词不定式、动名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式

例句：To see is to believe. 眼见为实。

Doing eye exercises is good for your eyes. 做眼睛保健操对你的眼睛十分有益。

考点8 a/an + 单数名词 + or two 作主语，谓语动词用单数

例句：A student or two has failed the exam. 一两个学生考试不及格。

考点9 主语带有介词短语

当主语部分含有 with, together with, along with, as well as, besides, except, but, like 等

介词或介词短语时, 谓语动词用单数形式; 但“名词+as well as+名词”时, 谓语动词一般应与第一个名词一致。如:

Mike with his father has been to England. 迈克同他的父亲去过英格兰。

Mike, like his brother, enjoys playing football. 迈克像他的哥哥一样喜欢踢足球。

The students as well as the teacher were present at the meeting. 学生们和教师出席了会议。

考点 10 and 连接主语

由 and 连接的两个单数名词作主语时, 一般用复数形式, 但 and 所连接的并列主语是同一个人、事物或概念时, 谓语动词用单数。这两种情况区分如下: a/the+单数名词+and+单数名词, 指的是同一个人或物; a/the+单数名词+and+a/the+单数名词, 指两个人或物。如:

The writer and teacher is coming. 那位作家兼教师来了。(作家和教师指同一个人)

The writer and the teacher are coming. 作家和老师来了。(作家和老师是两个人)

考点 11 集体名词作主语

people, police 等集体名词作主语, 谓语动词用复数形式; family, class, group, team 等集体名词作主语, 若指一个整体时, 谓语动词用单数形式, 若指各个具体成员时, 谓语动词复数形式。如:

People here are very friendly. 这儿的人很友好。

His family isn't large. 他家的人不多。

My family all like watching TV. 我们一家人都喜欢看电视。

考点 12 不定代词作主语

不定代词 somebody, someone, something, anybody, anything, everybody, everyone, everything, nobody, no one, nothing 作主语, 谓语动词用单数。如:

Is everyone here today? 今天大家到齐了吗?

Something is wrong with him. 他有毛病。

Nobody was in. 没有人在家。

考点 13 each, either, neither, another, the other 作主语, 谓语动词用单数

例句: Each of them has an English dictionary. 他们每人都有一本英语词典。

Neither answer is correct. 两个答案都不正确。

考点 14 以-s 结尾的名词本身不表示复数意义, 谓语通常用单数形式, 如 news, maths, physics 等

例句: No news is good news. 没有消息就是好消息。

Maths is very popular in our class 在我们班数学很受欢迎。

考点 15 特殊连接词

(1) 由“both... and...”连接两个单数名词作主语时, 谓语动词用复数形式; 由“or, either... or..., neither... nor..., not only... but also..., not... but...”连接两个名词或代词作主语时, 根据就近原则决定谓语动词形式。如:

Either my wife or I am going. 要么我, 要么我妻子准备去。

Neither you, nor I, nor anyone else knows the answer. 你、我和任何其他人都不知道答案。

Not only you but also he is ready to leave. 不仅仅你还有他都准备离开。

(2) 如果 either, each, neither 作主语, 则动词为单数形式。如:

Each of us has his likes and dislikes. 我们每个人都有我们喜欢的和不喜欢的。

Neither of the books is very interesting. 这些书中没有一本是有意思的。

考点 16 主语由数量短语构成

如果主语是由“a series of, a kind of, a portion of 等 + 名词”构成时, 动词一般用单数形式。但 a variety of, a number of + 名词复数, 动词要用复数形式; 而 the number of + 复数名词作主语, 谓语动词用单数。如:

On exhibition there are a great variety of consumer goods. 展览会上有各种各样的消费品。

The number of the students is over eight hundred. 学生的数量超过了 800 人。

考点 17 以 here, there 开头的句子, 若主语在两个或两个以上, 谓语动词通常与邻近的主语一致

例句: There is a book and three pens on the desk. 桌子上有一本书和三支钢笔。

Here are some books and paper for you. 有一些书和纸给你。

考点 18 “the + 形容词”表示一类人时, 谓语动词用复数形式, 表示抽象概念时, 用单数形式

例句: The poor are very happy, but the rich are sad. 穷人很开心, 但是富人很伤心。

The beautiful lives forever. 美是永存的。

考点 19 当表示国家、城市、人名、书名、报纸、杂志及组织机构等的专有名词做主语时, 作为整体, 谓语动词用单数形式

例句: The New York Times is reading all over the United States. 很多美国人看《纽约时报》。

考点 20 疑问代词作主语时, 其谓语动词也有两种情况: 主语表示复数意义, 谓语动词用复数; 主语表示单数意义, 则谓语动词用单数

例句: Who is your brother? 你兄弟是谁?

Who are League members? 谁是团员?

考点 21 分数、百分数作主语

“分数(百分数) + of + 名词”作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数取决于 of 后面的名词的数。但要注意 population 一词, 用作整体时, 谓语动词用单数, 用其部分作主语时, 谓语动词形式用复数。如:

Part of the work has been done by us. 我们已经完成了这份工作的一部分。

Ten percent of the apples were bad. 这些苹果中 10% 都坏了。

The population of China is 13.6 billion and 70% of the population are peasants. 中国人口有 13.6 亿, 而且其中有 70% 是农民。

考点 22 定语从句中的谓语单复数

在定语从句中主语是关系代词 who, that, which, 谓语动词的数应与先行词的数一致。注意: 在“one of + 复数名词 + who/that/which”引导的定语从句中, 从句谓语的单复数取决于 one 前是否有 the (only), the very。如果有从句的谓语动词用单数, 如果没有 the only, 就用复数形式。如:

This is one of the most interesting questions that have been asked. 这是提问中最有意思的一个。

He was the only one of the students who was late for school. 他是学生中唯一一个迟到的。



真题再现

- () 1. (苏州) _____ of the land in that district _____ covered with trees and grass.

A. Two fifths; is
B. Two fifth; are
C. Two fifth; is
D. Two fifths; are

【解析】A. 分数的分子用基数词，分母为序数词。分子不是“1”时，分母序数词加s。主语 land 为不可数名词，所以谓语动词用单数。故选 A。

- () 2. (宿迁) There _____ a big cake and many candies at the party yesterday.

A. was B. were
C. is D. are



实战模拟

单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. Either Jane or Steven _____ watching TV now.

A. were B. is
C. was D. are

- () 2. Two days _____ enough for me to finish the work. I need a third day.

A. isn't B. is
C. aren't D. are

- () 3. —How many lessons do you usually have a day?

—Six lessons a day. And each of them _____ 45 minutes.

A. last B. lasts
C. have D. are

【解析】A. there be 句型，谓语动词就近原则，a big cake 为单数，时间 yesterday 是昨天。故选 A。

- () 3. (兰州) I think _____ of the materials I listened to at the beginning of the exam _____ easy.

A. three fourths; is
B. third four; are
C. three fourths; are
D. three fourth; are

【解析】C. 分数的构成原则是：分子用基数词，分母用序数词，分子大于1时，分母用复数。“四分之三的材料”表达的是复数概念。故选 C。

- () 4. Neither Li Ping nor I _____ a basketball player.

A. am B. is
C. be D. are

- () 5. There _____ many new words in Lesson One. It is very easy.

A. is B. aren't
C. isn't D. are

- () 6. The number of the students in our school _____ 1200.

A. is B. are
C. has D. have

- () 7. Maths _____ my favourite subject.

A. be B. is
C. am D. are

- () 8. The boy with the two dogs _____



- when the earthquake rocked the city.
A. were sleeping B. is sleeping
C. was sleeping D. are asleep
- () 9. Every one except Tom and John _____.
There when the meeting began.
A. are B. is
C. were D. was
- () 10. That place is not interesting at all.
_____ of us wants to go there.
A. Neither B. Both
C. All D. Some
- () 11. Nobody but Jane _____ the secret.
A. know B. knows
C. have know D. is
- () 12. This pair of glasses _____ mine.
A. are B. be
C. is D. will be
- () 13. Both Lily and Lucy _____ to the party yesterday.
A. invited B. was invited
C. had invited D. were invited
- () 14. —Two metres _____ long.
—Yes, I'm afraid that he needs more.
A. is B. are
C. isn't D. aren't
- () 15. In the city the old _____.
A. take good care of
B. are taken good care of
C. is taken good care of
D. takes good care of
- () 16. His family _____ all very kind and friendly. His family _____ a happy one.
A. are; is B. is; is
C. are; are D. is; are
- () 17. The singer and the dancer _____ come to Beijing.
A. has B. have
C. are D. is
- () 18. All but one _____ here just now.
A. is B. was
C. has been D. were
- () 19. You as well as he _____ to blame (责备) for the accident.
A. are B. is
C. have D. has
- () 20. Not only my wife but also I myself _____ able to teach my daughter to sing English songs.
A. has been B. is
C. are D. am

第16章 倒装句

倒装句考查在近几年的中考试题中都有涉及,一般考点为:(1)副词位于句首,且主语为名词,须倒装;若主语为代词则不倒装。(2)特殊连词位于句首须倒装。(3)特殊句型结构,如:so+助动词+主语,not until等。对此我们需要熟记他们的特殊用法,这样做起题来就毫无困难。



考点透视

考点1 以副词 **here, there, off, out, away** 等开头的句子,当其主语为名词时,通常要使用全部倒装

例句: Here comes our teacher! 我们老师来了!

Away went the boy to the school! 那男孩子到学校里去了!

Off goes the woman! 那个女人走了!

考点2 在 **so... that** 结构中, **so** 位于句首时,往往要使用倒装结构

例句: So loudly did the students read that people could hear them out in the street. 同学们大声读书,人们在街上都听得见(他们的读书声)。

考点3 **Nor/Neither+...+主语**,表示“某人也不”; **So+...+主语**,表示“某人也”

例句: I will go there. So will she. 我准备去那里,她也去。

If it rains tomorrow, I won't go to work. Nor/ Neither will Tom. 如果明天下雨,我就不去上班了。汤姆也不去。

考点4 **Only after... 和 Not until...** 后接状语且放在句首时,主句常倒装

例句: Only after he came, could I leave. 只有他来了以后,我才能离开。

Not until all the money was gone, did they realize how serious the problem was. 直到所有的钱不见了,他们才意识到问题有多严重。

考点5 **No sooner... than “一……就……”** 结构中常用倒装

例句: No sooner had they come than we stood up to greet them. 他们一来我们就站起来问候他们。

特别记忆 (1) 平时一般不放在句首的状语,为了强调起见而放在句首时,使用倒装结构。如:

Near the bridge was an old cottage. 桥的附近有一幢古老的小茅舍。

Well do I remember the day I saw a wild tiger. 见到那只猛虎的那一天,我记得很清楚。

(2) 当直接引语的一部分或者全部位于句首,主语又是名词或名词短语时,该引述分句常用倒装结构。如:

“What shall we do?” said the teacher. “我们做什么好呢?”老师问。

“Great!” said my father. “I'll go there.” “好极了!”我父亲说。“我准备到那里去。”

(3) 某些让步状语从句往往把表语提到主语前面或放在句首,以构成倒装结构。如:

No matter how interesting the book is, he doesn't like to read it. 不管这本书多有趣,他都不喜欢看。

However hard a solid may be, we can change its shape. 不管固体有多硬, 我们都可以改变其形状。

Young as he is, he knows some of the family secrets. 尽管他年纪小, 但他却知道家里的一些秘密。



真题再现

- () 1. (莱芜) Yao Ming works hard on his English and _____.
A. so Liu Xiang does
B. so is Liu Xiang
C. so does Liu Xiang
D. so Liu Xiang is

【解析】C。本句为倒装句, 句式为: “so + 助词 + 主语”, 助词必须和前句一致, 一般现在时助词用 does。故选 C。

- () 2. (眉山) —My brother and I will go to the library tomorrow.
—_____. Shall we go together?
A. So am I B. So do I
C. So I am D. So will I

【解析】D。根据题意, 应该用倒装句, 构成是: so + 助词 + 主语, 而且助动词保持一致, “明天要去”, 用一般将来时。故选 D。



实战模拟

单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- () 1. No sooner _____ themselves in their seats in the theatre _____ the curtain went up.
A. they have settled; before
B. had they settled; than
C. have they settled; when
D. they had settled; than
- () 2. I wonder if your girl friend will go to the ball. If she _____, so _____ mine.
A. does; does B. does; will

- () 3. (兰州) —I hear Huang Gang made an English speech at the graduation ceremony yesterday.
—_____, and _____.
A. So he did; so did I
B. So did he; so I did
C. So he was; so was I
D. So was he; so I was

【解析】A。本题考查的是 so 引导的倒装句。把副词 so 放在句首, 表示前面所说的情况也适用于另一人或物, 构成 “so + be (have, 助动词或情态动词) + 主语” 句型。如果表示对上文的肯定用 so + 主语 + be (have, 助动词或情态动词), 表示 “确实如此”。根据题意: 上文说黄刚做了演讲, 回答: 他确实做了 (演讲), 并且我也做了。故选 A。

- C. will; does D. would; will
- () 3. It's necessary that not only _____ to see a doctor but also he should stay at home for a good sleep.
A. Bob should go
B. did Bob go
C. Bob's going
D. should Bob go
- () 4. In _____, but out _____ again.
A. came the teacher; he went
B. came the teacher; went he
C. did the teacher come; he went
D. the teacher came; went he

- () 5. It's beyond description. Nowhere else in the world _____ such a quiet, beautiful place.
A. can there be B. you can find
C. there can be D. can find you
- () 6. Not until Dec. 2003 _____ caught by the US soldiers, and it was a great victory for the USA.
A. was Saddam Hussein
B. Saddam Hussein was
C. had Saddam Hussein been
D. Saddam Hussein had been
- () 7. Only after _____ his homework _____ to watch TV.
A. he has finished; is he allowed
B. has he finished; is he allowed
C. he has finished; he is allowed
D. has he finished; he is allowed
- () 8. From then on we never saw her again, nor _____ from her.
A. heard we
B. had we heard
C. we have heard
D. did we hear
- () 9. "Never _____ to hurt your feeling while I was expressing myself in the discussion," explained Jim.
A. I expected
B. expected I
C. had I expected
D. did I expect
- () 10. _____ our bus; we'll have to wait for the next.
A. Does there go B. It goes
C. There goes D. Does it go



第17章 强调句

强调句在中考试题中一般有1~2个试题。主要考查 It is/ was + ... that 句型及其句型的其他句式(如一般疑问句、特殊疑问句等)的运用。考查题型主要是单项选择和句型转换。



考点透视

考点1 在动词前面加上助动词 do/did/does

一般现在时的第三人称单数用“does+动词原形”，一般过去时用“did+动词原形”，其他用“do+动词原形”。译成汉语时，可使用“的确，确实，务必，一定，千万，真的”等词来突出强调语气。如：

She did accomplish the task in time. 她的确及时完成了任务。

We do have sufficient food and drink. 我们确实有足够的食物和饮料。

考点2 在 what, where, who, why, how 等疑问词后面加上 on earth, in (或 under) heaven 等词组

翻译成汉语时，可以增加“究竟，到底”等词。如：

What on earth is the matter over there? 那里到底发生了什么事情？

考点3 “It is + 被强调部分 + that...” 强调句型

在英语中，“It is + 被强调部分 + that...” 这种强调句型用来突出句子的某一个部分，在意义上起强调作用。被强调部分指人时，可用 who 代替 that。这个句型中的 it 没有实际意义，只是用来改变句子结构，使句子的某一成分得到强调，所强调的部分可以是谓语以外的其他任何成分：主语、宾语、状语等。如：

It was Professor Wu that/who sent me the letter. 给我寄信的正是吴教授。

It is this novel that they talked about last week. 他们上周讨论的就是这本小说。

It was at an evening party that I first saw her. 我是在一次晚会上第一次见到她的。

It was when Hemingway lived in Cuba that he wrote *The Old Man and the Sea*. 海明威是生活在古巴的时候写《老人与海》的。

It is only when one is ill that one realizes the importance of health. 人们只有在生病时才知道健康的重要性。

It was not until recently that scientists know much about lung cancer. 直到最近，科学家才对肺癌有较多的了解。



真题再现

- () 1. (黄冈) It is the ability to do the job _____ matters, not where you come from or what you are.

- A. one B. that
C. what D. it

【解析】B。考查强调结构的基本形式 “It

is/was+被强调部分+that/who...”，可以用来强调主语、宾语、状语等。本句是强调主语，可译为“重要的是工作能力，而不是你是哪里人或者什么人”。

() 2. (黄冈) Was _____ that I saw last night at the concert?

- A. it you B. not you
C. you D. yourself

【解析】A。考查强调结构的一般疑问句“Is/Was it+被强调部分+that/who...?”本句可译为“是不是你呀，我昨晚在音乐会上看到的那个?”该句的非强调形式为 Did I see you last night at the concert?

() 3. (黄冈) I have always been honest and straight-forward, and it doesn't matter _____ I'm talking to.

- A. who is it B. who it is that
C. it is who D. it is whom

【解析】B。考查强调结构的特殊疑问句。“特殊疑问词 (Who/What/When/Where/Why/How...) + is/was it that ...?”本句可译为：“我一向诚实而且直率，究竟是和谁交谈是无关紧要的。”该句的非强调形式为 ... and it

doesn't matter whom I'm talking to.

() 4. (黄冈) It was not _____ she took off her dark glasses _____ I realized she was a famous film star.

- A. when; that B. until; that
C. until; when D. when; then

【解析】B。考查对 not ... until ... 句式的强调，其结构为 “It is/was not until ... that ...”，本句可译为：“直到她摘下墨镜，我才认出她是一位著名的影星。”该句的非强调形式为 I did not realize she was a famous film star until she took off her dark glasses.

() 5. (黄冈) —Wasn't it Dr Wang who spoke to you just now?

- _____.
A. I didn't know he was
B. Yes, it was
C. No, he wasn't
D. Yes, he did

【解析】B。考查强调句型的反意疑问句及回答应与 It is/was ... that ... 结构保持一致。本句句意为“刚才难道不是王先生和你谈话的吗?”“是的，正是他”。



实战模拟

单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

() 1. Who was it _____ put so many large stones on the road?

- A. this B. that
C. he D. she

() 2. What a silly mistake it is _____ you've made!

- A. it B. this
C. that D. which

() 3. It was not until midnight _____

the noise of the street stopped.

- A. that B. this
C. who D. at which

() 4. Was _____ that I met at the railway station the other day?

- A. it you B. not you
C. you D. that you

() 5. It was when she was about to go to bed _____ the telephone rang.

- A. since B. as
C. that D. then

() 6. It may have been at Christmas _____



John gave Mary a handbag.

- A. before B. who
C. that D. when

() 7. It is I that _____ at home.

- A. is B. am
C. are D. be

() 8. It was the boy _____ had been in prison _____ stole the money.

- A. who; where B. that; how
C. who; that D. that; which

() 9. It was _____ my father worked _____ I work now.

- A. where; that
B. where; when
C. that; where
D. that; that

() 10. _____ run fast, Tom!

- A. Did B. Does
C. Do D. Is

第18章 名词性从句

名词性从句在中考试题中主要考查宾语从句，个别地区的试题会涉及表语从句和主语从句。考查内容主要是引导词的选择、宾语从句的时态和语序。考查题型基本上都在单项选择题中。对此我们需要掌握定语从句引导词的词义、基本用法及须记忆的知识。宾语从句的用法见“第10章”。



考点透视

考点1 主语从句中 that 和 what 的选用

that 和 what 都可引导主语从句。what 除起连接作用外，还在名词性从句中充当主语、宾语或表语。而 that 在名词性从句中不充当任何成分，无词义，只起连接作用。如：

What they need is a good textbook. 他们所需要的是一本好课本。

That we are invited to a concert is good news to us. 我们被邀请去参加音乐会，这对我们来说是个好消息。

考点2 主语从句中 if 和 whether 的选用

当主语从句放于句首时，不能用 if，只能用 whether。如：

Whether the meeting will be held is still a problem. 是否会开会还是一个问题。

考点3 其他连接代词和副词的选用

根据主语从句的具体意义，正确选择 who, which, when, where, why, how 等连接词，这些连接词既起连接作用，同时在从句中充当各种成分。



真题再现

- () 1. (黄冈) _____ fashion differs from country to country may reflect the cultural differences from one aspect.

A. What B. That
C. This D. Which

【解析】B。本题考查 what 和 that 的区别。主语从句“fashion differs from country to country”不缺少任何成分，只需要一个引导词 that。

- () 2. (黄冈) _____ we can't get seems better than _____ we have.

A. What; what B. What; that
C. That; that D. That; what

【解析】A。由句意判断，引导词在从句中

都作宾语。

- () 3. (黄冈) A computer can only do _____ you have instructed it to do.

A. how B. after
C. what D. when

【解析】C。本题考查考生对从属连词引导不同从句的使用能力。题意为：“计算机只能做你让它做的事情。” what 引导宾语从句，在句中作 to do 的宾语。

- () 4. (黄冈) —I think it's going to be a big problem.

—Yes, it could be.

—I wonder _____ we can do about it.



- A. if B. how
C. what D. that

【解析】C。本题考查宾语从句的引导词，由于句中的动词 do 缺少宾语，所以选 what，即 C。

() 5. (黄冈) —I drove to Zhuhai for the air show last week.

—Is that _____ you had a few days off?



实战模拟

单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中，选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

() 1. —I'd like to know _____.

—At 6:30.

A. when does your mother usually cook breakfast

B. how your mother usually cooks breakfast

C. when your mother cooks breakfast

D. how does your mother usually cook breakfast

() 2. _____ makes mistakes must correct them.

A. What B. That

C. Whoever D. Whatever

() 3. He made a promise _____ he would help me.

A. what B. when

C. that D. which

() 4. —Excuse me, could you tell me _____ the book about aliens?

—Sure, take the escalator to the second floor.

A. where I can buy

B. where can I buy

C. when can I buy

D. when I can buy

- A. why B. when
C. what D. where

【解析】A。本题考查表语从句的引导词。根据上句话，B、D 两项可以排除，因为地点 (Zhuhai) 和时间 (last week) 都有了，从句不缺少宾语；C 项也不符合要求，故答案为 A，意为“那就是你请几天假的原因？”

() 5. I really want to know _____.

A. what is wrong with my brother

B. how will he go to Beijing tomorrow

C. if had he bought that car

D. where did he go yesterday

() 6. The train hasn't arrived yet. Could you tell me _____?

A. why the train is late

B. that the train can come on time

C. when will the train arrive

D. why does the train arrive late

() 7. It's uncertain _____ the experiment is worth doing.

A. if B. that

C. whether D. how

() 8. _____ the boy didn't take medicine made his mother angry.

A. That B. What

C. How D. Which

() 9. Go and get your coat. It's _____ you left it.

A. there B. where

C. there were D. where there

() 10. Perseverance (坚持不懈) is a kind of quality and that's _____ it takes to do anything well.

A. what B. that

C. which D. why

第19章 独立主格结构与省略

省略在中考的考查主要是为了避免重复,涉及动词不定式后省略、从句主语和 be 动词省略、冠词省略、连接词后相同内容的省略等。考查的题型主要为单项选择。



考点透视

考点1 with 独立主格结构

(1) with + 名词/代词 + 介词短语。如:

He stood at the door, with a computer in his hand. 他站在门口,手里拿着一台电脑。

(2) with + 名词/代词 + 过去分词。如:

The boy stood there, with his hand raised. 这个男孩站在那里,举着手。

(3) with + 名词/代词 + 动词不定式。如:

The kid feels excited with so many places of interest to visit. 有这么多的名胜可参观,小孩很激动。

(4) with + 名词/代词 + 现在分词。如:

With the guide leading us, we got to the village. 在向导的带领下,我们到达了那个村庄。

(5) with + 名词/代词 + 副词。如:

The boy was walking, with his father ahead. 父亲在前,小孩在后走着。

(6) with + 名词/代词 + 形容词。如:

With his son so disappointing, the old man felt unhappy. 由于儿子如此令人失望,老人感到很不快乐。

考点2 其他独立主格结构

(1) 名词(代词) + 现在分词。如:

Night falling down, nobody could make out what the dark mass was from a distance. 夜幕降临大地,谁也看不清远处黑压压的一片是什么东西。

(2) 名词(代词) + 过去分词。如:

He was listening attentively in class, his eyes fixed on the blackboard. 他上课专心听讲,眼睛紧盯着黑板。

(3) 名词(代词) + 不定式。

在“名词(代词) + 动词不定式”结构中,动词不定式和它前面的名词或代词如果存在着逻辑上的主谓关系,动词不定式用主动形式;如果是动宾关系,则用被动形式。如:

The four of us agreed on a division of labour, each to translate a quarter of the book. 我们四人同意分工干,每人翻译全书的四分之一。

Many trees, flowers, and grass to be planted, our newly-built school will look even more beautiful. 种上许多的树、花和草后,我们新建的学校看上去将更美。

(4) 名词(代词) + 形容词。如:

The Trojans asleep, the Greek soldiers crept out of the hollow wooden horse. 特洛伊人睡着了, 于是希腊士兵从中空的木马里悄悄爬了出来。

(5) 名词(代词) + 副词。如:

The meeting over, our headmaster soon left the meeting room. 散会了, 校长很快就离开了会议室。

考点 3 复合句中的省略

(1) 定语从句。一般来说, 在限制性定语从句中, 作宾语的关系代词 that, which, whom 可以省略; 而在非限制性定语从句中作宾语的关系代词 which, whom 不可以省略。如:

Is this the book you bought yesterday? 这就是你昨天买的那本书吗?

I don't like the way he talks. 我不喜欢他说话的方式。

(2) 状语从句。如果从句的主语与主句的主语一致, 或从句的主语是指主句的内容, 从句中的主语可以省略。如:

If heated, water will boil. 如果加热, 水会沸腾。

We'll go to help you if necessary. 如果必要, 我们将会帮助你。

(3) 宾语从句。如果宾语从句中的谓语与主句的谓语相同, 可将从句部分的谓语省略。如:

We will do what we can (do) to help you. 我们将尽我们所能来帮助你。

考点 4 动词不定式的省略

(1) 在动词不定式结构中, 为了避免重复, 常常省略不定式结构中的动词原形, 只保留 to。如:

—Would you like to go with us? 你想和我们一起去吗?

—I'm glad to, but I have to finish my homework first. 我很高兴, 但是我必须先完成我的家庭作业。

—Have you ever been to the seaside? 你去过海边吗?

—No, we can't afford to. 没有, 我们负担不起。

(2) 在 used to, ought to, have to, would like/love to, wish to, be going to 等结构中, 常常省略 to 后面的动词原形。如:

He doesn't get up early as he used to. 他起床不如以前早。

I'll hand it in if I have to. 如果必须的话, 我会把它交上去。

—Would you like to come tonight? 今晚你愿意来吗?

—Yes, I'd love to. 我愿意。

(3) tell, warn, order, advise, ask 等动词的宾语后面接动词不定式作宾语补足语, 而且与前面动作重复时, 可以省略 to 后面的动词原形。如:

He wanted to swim across the river but I warned him not to. 他想游过这条河, 但是我警告他不要这么做。

The boy wanted to play football in the street, but his mother told him not to. 这个男孩想在街上踢足球, 但是他妈妈告诉他不要(在街上踢足球)。

考点 5 虚拟语气中的省略

if 引导的状语从句可以省略 if, 而把从句中的动词 were, had 或 should 移到主语前面。如:

Were she younger, she would do it. 如果她年轻点, 她就会去做这件事。

Had he known her address, he would have gone to visit her. 如果他知道她的地址, 他会去看她的。



真题再现

- () 1. (黄冈) The girl in the snapshot was smiling sweetly, her long hair _____.

A. flowed in the breeze
B. was flowing in the breeze
C. were flowing in the breeze
D. flowing in the breeze

【解析】D. her long hair 与 flow 是主动关系，这是现在分词独立主格结构作状语。

- () 2. (黄冈) The children went home from the grammar school, their lessons _____ for the day.

A. finishing B. finished
C. had finished D. were finished

【解析】B. 因 lessons 与动词 finish 之间为被动关系，故要用过去分词。“their lessons finished for the day” 为独立主格结构。

- () 3. (黄冈) On Sundays there were a lot of children playing in the park, _____ parents seated together joking.

A. their B. whose
C. which D. that

【解析】A. 此题容易误选 B，认为这是非限制性定语从句。其实，句中的“parents seated together joking” 不是非限制性定语从句，而是一个独立主格结构，因为空格后的 seated 不是谓语，而是一个过去分词。

- () 4. (黄冈) The Smiths are rich and they have three cars, one a Toyota, _____ Land Rover of the latest.

A. another B. other
C. the other D. the others

【解析】D. 易误选 C，后面部分实际上是独立主格结构形式，省略了 being。补充完整就是：The Smiths are rich and they have three cars, one being a Toyota, the others being Land Rover of the latest.

- () 5. (安徽) —Please bring little Tom

next time you come to Anhui.

— _____, thank you.

A. I will B. I hope so
C. That's right D. My pleasure

【解析】A. 交际用语和习惯用法。由上句的问句可知：回答的也是下次，未发生，所以用将来时态，该句选答案 A。

- () 6. (晋江) —Tomorrow will be sunny. How about having a picnic in the park?

— _____. But I have to prepare for tomorrow's exam.

A. I'd love B. I'd love to
C. That's right

【解析】B. 根据对话内容可知，“乐意去，但是我必须为明天考试做准备”，故选择 B。

- () 7. (宜昌) —Don't forget to turn off the lights if you are the last one to leave.

— _____.
A. Me neither B. I won't
C. Me too D. I will

【解析】B. 答句省略了 turn off the lights，根据句意，答案应选 B。

- () 8. (宿迁) —Do you mind if I smoke here?

— _____. You can go to smoke in the next door.

A. Yes, please
B. Never mind
C. You'd better not
D. Of course not

【解析】C. 根据实际情况回答“do you mind”的提问，介意你在这里吸烟，所以你最好别在这里吸，你可以到隔壁去吸。省略了 smoke，故选 C。

- () 9. (杭州) —Will you be able to come and help us clean the room?

— _____, but I'm doing my

homework.

A. I'd love to

B. I hope not

C. I do care

D. I'm afraid not



实战模拟

单项选择

从下列各题所给的 A、B、C 和 D 四个选项中, 选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

() 1. _____ no bus, we had to walk home.

A. There was

B. There being

C. Because there being

D. There be

() 2. _____, I'll go there with you tomorrow afternoon.

A. Time permits

B. If time permitting

C. Time permitting

D. Time's permitting

() 3. _____, we all went home happily.

A. Goodbye was said

B. Goodbye had been said

C. Goodbye said

D. When goodbye said

() 4. _____, we all went swimming in high spirits.

A. It being fine weather

B. It fine weather

C. It was fine weather

D. It being a fine weather

() 5. _____, the bus started at once.

A. The signal was given

B. The signal giving

C. The signal given

D. When the signal given

() 6. She stood there, _____ from her cheeks.

【解析】A. 根据题意“你能来帮我打扫房间吗? 我很愿意, 但我正在做作业”可知其他不符合题意。省略了 to 后面的“come and help you clean the room”, 故答案选 A。

A. tears' rolling down

B. tears rolled down

C. with tears rolled down

D. tears rolling down

() 7. _____, the leaves are turning green.

A. When spring coming on

B. Spring coming on

C. Spring came on

D. Spring being come on

() 8. _____, I had to buy a new one.

A. My dictionary losing

B. My dictionary having been lost

C. My dictionary had been lost

D. Because my dictionary lost

() 9. I used to sleep with the window _____.

A. opened B. open

C. opening D. to open

() 10. He left the room _____.

A. with the door closing

B. with the door closed

C. with the door being closed

D. the door closed

() 11. —Shall I take a message to your parents that you've been all right?

—Yes, it will be nice _____.

A. to do B. to do it

C. if you do D. if it is so

() 12. —Can you get the first place in the model airplane competition?

—_____. The competition is too fierce.

- A. I'm afraid not
B. I'm afraid so
C. I'm not afraid so
D. I'm afraid not so
- () 13. —Will the US and PDRK reach an agreement on the nuclear issue recently?
—_____. There is no sign of it.
A. Yes, I hope do
B. Yes, I hope it
C. No, I hope not
D. No, I don't hope so
- () 14. —There's a fancy party this evening. We're expecting your participation.
—_____, but there's something wrong with our tap.
A. I'd like it B. I'd love to
C. Good idea D. Sure
- () 15. China today is no longer what it _____. We've become an economical and political power.
A. was like B. was used to
C. used to D. used to be
- () 16. —Charles telephoned to say that he didn't receive your software.
—But he _____. I posted it to him 5 days ago.
A. must have
B. had received
C. ought to
D. ought to have
- () 17. So much for this problem. _____?
A. Anything other
B. Something more
C. Anything else
D. Anything you ask for
- () 18. This project is progressing much more smoothly than _____.
A. last year
B. that of last year
C. it was last year
D. we had last year
- () 19. We came to the grassland. Mashes (沼泽) everywhere. No houses. _____.
A. Not a soul had been seen
B. Not a soul is seen
C. Not a soul seen
D. Not a soul to be seen
- () 20. When July comes, the weather in Thailand is getting hotter and hotter, but _____.
A. in Australia, is colder and colder
B. Australia is getting colder and colder
C. in Australia, colder and colder
D. Australia is colder and colder

第20章 易混词辨析

易混词的考查主要在词义辨析、固定搭配、拼写、用法等方面，涉及的题型主要有单项选择、完形填空、语法选择、写单词、用正确形式填空、改错等。



考点透视

考点1 clothes / cloth / clothing

(1) clothes 总以复数形式出现，指人们穿的各种具体的衣服，包括上衣、内衣、外衣、衬衫等，其前不能用数词修饰，但可用 these, many, a few 等词修饰。单独作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式；但 a suit of clothes 作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。如：

Do I have to change my clothes for the meeting? 我必须要换衣服去开会吗？

A suit of clothes is on the bed. 床上有一套衣服。

(2) cloth 指做衣服等用的材料，如布料、毛料、丝绸等，是名词，不能直接和不定冠词 a 连用。当 cloth 和某些词构成复合名词，指作为特殊用途的一块布时，是可数名词。如：

This piece of cloth is very beautiful. 这块布料很漂亮。

She cleaned the window with an old cloth. 她用一块旧布擦窗子。

(3) clothing 是集体名词，为衣服的总称。除衣裤之外，它还包括帽子、袜子、手套、被褥之类的东西，没有复数形式。表达“一件衣服”可以用“a piece of clothing, an article of clothing”。如：

The shop sells articles of men's clothing. 这个商店卖男士服装。

In winter children need warm clothing. 冬天孩子们需要保暖的衣服。

考点2 date / day

(1) date 指具体的“日期”，表示“几月几日”，也指某件事情发生的年、月、日，问“几月几日”用 What's the date... 此外，date 还有约会的意思。如：

What's the date? 今天几号了？

Shall we fix a date for the picnic? 我们定一下野炊的日期好吗？

I have a date with her next month. 我和她下个月有个约会。

(2) day 泛指“日子”，常表示星期几。a day 一天；days 一些日子；all day 整天；one day 某天。如：

A day's work tired him. 一天的工作使他累了。

May Day is a great international holiday. “五一”是伟大的国际性节日。

What day is it today? 今天星期几？

考点3 problem / question

(1) problem “问题，习题”，总是与“困难”相联系，它可以指社会问题、教学问题，这种“问题”是较难的、客观存在的、有待于解决的，常与 settle 和 solve 连用。如：

The problem is how to get the money for the project. 问题是如何为工程筹集资金。

(2) question 词义较广, 指一切有待讨论或回答的“问题”, 总是与“疑问, 质问, 询问”相联系, 常与动词 ask 和 answer 连用。如:

The answer to this question is now under exploration. 该问题的解决办法在探讨中。

考点 4 work / job

(1) work 的意思是“工作, 用功”, 是不可数名词。如:

She has a lot of work to do on Sundays. 每到周日她都有好多活要做。

The work of building the new bridge took six months. 那座桥梁的工程费时半载。

(2) job 表示“零工, 具体的工作, 职业”, 是可数名词。如:

How much salary does the job pay? 这份工作的薪水是多少?

I do think they know their job. 我确实认为他们熟悉自己的业务。

考点 5 holiday / vacation

(1) holiday “假日, 休息日”, 可用于各种假日, 如公休日、各种节假日或寒暑假等, 通常用单数; 表示短期的假期, 与季节连用时多用复数。如:

Tomorrow will be a holiday. 明天放假。

The classes have closed for winter holidays. 已停课放寒假。

(2) vacation “假期”, 在英国指大学的寒暑假或法定休息日, 在美国可指任何假(日)期, 常可用 holiday 替换。如:

Did you go anywhere during the summer vacation? 你暑假期间去过什么地方吗?

考点 6 country / nation / state

(1) 这三个词都有“国家”的意思, 但侧重点不同。country 指自然地理方面的“国家”, 侧重指“版图, 疆域”, 如中国、美国及英国等都是 country; 此外, country 还可表示“乡间, 郊外”。如:

China is a socialist country. 中国是一个社会主义国家。

I spent my youth in the country. 我在乡间度过了青年时代。

(2) nation 侧重一个国家的人民或国民(作主语时, 谓语用单数), 可译为“民族, 人民, 国家”。如:

The Chinese are an industrious nation. 中华民族是个勤劳的民族。

The nation's economy is growing rapidly. 这个国家的经济在快速增长。

(3) state 指政治概述的“国家”, 侧重“政府, 政体”, 在美国, state 常用来表示“州”。如:

This factory is owned by the state. 这家工厂为国家所有。

An independent school is not controlled by the state. 独立的学校不受政府控制。

考点 7 journey / travel / trip / tour

(1) journey 为可数名词, 指从一地到另一地, 通常是经陆地上的, 时间和距离都较长的单程“旅行”, 并可指整段旅程的距离和用去的时间, 或经常走的或长或短的“路程”, 其用法较正式。如:

I took a journey from Beijing to Shanghai last year. 去年我从北京到上海做了一次旅行。

We'll start our journey as soon as you are ready. 你一准备好, 我们就启程去旅行。

(2) travel 可作动词和不可数名词, 泛指“旅行, 游历”, 是旅游或旅行的总称, 但可用复数 travels 来指访问过好几个地方的一次长时间的特别是海外的旅行。如:

Do you go to Paris during your travels? 你在旅途中有没有去巴黎?

(3) trip 在英国英语中主要用来指短程的观光和公差旅行。在美国英语中, trip 的用法较广泛, 可指乘坐短程交通工具和徒步远足旅行, 但多指一个来回或往返, 即回到原出发地的旅行。trip 是非正式用语, 在口语中常代替 journey 的用法。如:

Do you remember our first fishing trip? 你还记得我们第一次去钓鱼的情况吗?

They are planning a bicycle trip. 他们正在计划一次自行车旅行。

(4) tour “周游; 游览”, 指为考察、观光等到许多地方, 再回到原地的“旅行”, 如一日游、周游、访问、视察、演出和环游世界等。由于 tour 不表示单程旅行, 表示“到某地旅游”时与介词 of 或 around 搭配。如:

He made a tour of the United States. 他去美国旅行了一次。

We hired a driver to take us on a tour of the city. 我们雇用了一个司机带我们游览这个城市。

(5) 表示“去旅行”, 可以说 make a journey, make a tour 及 make a trip, 但不可说 make a travel。如:

The Queen is making a tour of Canada. 女王正在加拿大巡视。

He made the 90-mile round trip in one hour. 他一小时完成了 90 英里的来回旅程。

He's making a long journey. 他在做长途旅行。

考点 8 game / match

(1) game “游戏, 比赛, 运动”, 指户内、户外、脑力、体力均可, 指球赛时多用于美式英语。棋类、桥牌等比赛中多用 game。如:

How are you enjoying the game so far? 到现在为止你们喜欢这个游戏吗?

Visitors here can chat over tea or enjoy a game of chess. 这里游人可以喝茶聊天, 也可以下棋。

(2) match “比赛, 竞赛”, 指球赛时, 多用于英式英语。它一般指预先安排好的正式比赛。摔跤、拳击等比赛中多用 match。如:

I don't like to watch a boxing match. 我不喜欢看拳击比赛。

考点 9 earth / ground / land / soil

(1) earth 表示“地, 地球, 泥土”, 着重指“大地”, 以区别于天空; 作“泥土”讲时, 常用于区别坚硬的岩石。如:

This worm eats earth. 这类虫子吃泥土。

The higher we go above the earth, the thinner the air is. 我们离开地面越高, 空气越稀薄。

(2) ground 表示“地, 土地”, 主要指大地表面, 也指土壤、场地, 引申为“根据, 理由”。如:

They are all lying on the ground. 他们都躺在地上。

It is difficult to dig the ground when it is frozen hard. 地面冻硬时不易挖掘。

(3) land 表示“陆地, 土地, 地”, 是河流和海洋的相对用语; 用于指土壤或土地时, 着重指它的性质、用途等; 有时泛指大地, 也可以作“国土, 地产”讲。如:

We are busy preparing the land for sowing. 我们忙于平整土地, 准备播种。

Most mammals live on land. 大多数哺乳动物生活在陆地上。

(4) soil 表示“土壤, 土地”, 指可以生长植物而且富有有机物的沃土, 适宜农耕。如:

Plants grow well in good soil. 植物在肥沃的土壤里长得好。

The soil can absorb the rainwater. 土壤会吸收雨水。

考点 10 a number of / the number of

(1) the number of 表示“……的数量”, 指具体一个数目, 后接复数名词, 这一结构作主语

时, 谓语动词用单数形式。如:

The number of books in our library is going up. 我们图书馆里的书的数量正在上升。

(2) a number of 意思是“很多, 好些”; 表示程度时, 可以在 number 之前加 large, great 和 small 之类的修饰词。注意, a number of 只能修饰复数名词, 不能修饰不可数名词; 修饰主语时, 谓语动词用复数形式。如:

A great number of books are missing from the library. 图书馆里的书正在大量流失。

A number of boys have been absent sometimes during the term. 这学期有许多男学生有时候缺课。

考点 11 cause / reason

(1) cause “起因, 原因”, 指的是造成某种事实、现象或结果的“原因”, 正是由于这个“原因”才导致发生了某事, 常与 of 引起的短语连用, excuse 或 reason 都不能这样用。cause 的反义词为 effect “结果”。如:

Drunken driving is one of the most common causes of the traffic accidents. 醉酒驾驶是最常见的交通事故的原因之一。

(2) reason “理由, 原因”, 只用以解释某些已发生的事情的理由, 这种理由可能是也可能不是真正的理由, 强调逻辑推理方面的理由, 常与 for 连用。for reasons of = by reason of, 意思是“是……原因”。如:

He is leaving our school for reasons of health. 由于健康的原因他要辍学了。

The reason for his going to France was that he got a new job there. 他要去法国的原因是他在那儿找到了新的工作。

考点 12 noise / sound / voice

(1) noise 指大的、令人不舒服的、难以忍受的“噪声, 喧闹声, 吵闹声”, 常用短语有: make a noise (吵闹)。如:

The children made a loud noise downstairs. 孩子们在楼下大声喧哗。

(2) sound “声音”, 含义最广, 指可以听到的任何声音。表示抽象意义的声音或泛指声音时是不可数名词, 表示具体的声音或某种特殊的声音时是可数名词。如:

In the distance there was a sound of band music, a match. 远处传来一阵军乐的声音, 是进行曲。

(3) voice 为可数名词, 指人说话和唱歌的声音, 也可指动物、昆虫和风发出的声音, 用于比喻意义时表示“意见, 发言权”。如:

I have no voice in the matter. 对于这件事, 我没有发言权。

考点 13 class / lesson

(1) class “课堂, 班级”, 指同一个班的学生聚集在一起上的“课”或“一节课”, 但并不指上课的内容。如:

There are fifty students in our class. 我们班有 50 个学生。

We have six classes today. 我们今天有 6 节课。

(2) lesson 指教科书中按某一特定内容所分成的单位, 或在某一单位时间内所授的“课程(内容)”, 还可以作“教训”讲。如:

We study Chinese, maths, English and other lessons. 我们学习语文、数学、英语, 还有其他课程。

Lesson Five is very difficult for me. 第五课对我来说很难。

(3) 两者都可作“(一)节课”解, 可以互换。表达“在课堂上”用 in class, “在……课上”



用 in... lesson, “去上课”用 go to class, “做功课”用 do one's lessons。如:

We have four lessons / classes in the morning. 我们上午有4节课。

Try to speak more English both in and out of class. 课内课外都要设法多讲英语。

The children sang English songs in English lessons. 孩子们在英语课上唱了英语歌。

考点 14 room / place / space

(1) room 作可数名词时表示“房间”;作不可数名词时,表示人或物体所占的“空间,场所”、处事的“余地”等,可用 little, much, no, plenty 等修饰。如:

Is there room for me in the car? 车里还有我的空位吗?

(2) place 为可数名词,指人们从事各种活动的“地方,场所,位置”。如:

This is a good place to live in. 这是个居住的好地方。

(3) space 意为“空间,太空,空处”时,是不可数名词,表示万物存在之处;作“空隙,空白”解时,是可数名词。如:

Have you enough space to work in? 你有够你做事的空间吗?

(4) 表示具体的“空间”时,room 和 space 可通用,表示抽象的“空间,余地”时,只能用 room。如:

There isn't space/room in the classroom for thirty desks. 教室里放不下30张桌子。

There is room in improvement in your work. 你在工作上有改进的空间。

考点 15 advice / suggestion

advice 与 suggestion 都是名词,都表示“建议,意见”的意思。但 advice 是不可数名词,“一条建议”表达为 a piece of advice,而 suggestion 则是可数名词。如:

This is a good piece of advice. / This is a good suggestion. 这是一条很好的建议。

考点 16 go to school / go to the school

(1) go to school 意为“去学校上学”,指的是与“学校”有关的活动,即“上学(读书)”;而 go to the school 意为“去这所学校”,涉及的是“学校”这个地方或其建筑物,与“读书”无关。如:

My son goes to school at 8 o'clock every day. 我儿子每天8点钟去上学。

My son went to the school at 8 o'clock yesterday. 我儿子昨天8点钟到那个学校去了。

(2) 以下固定搭配也有类似区别:

go to bed 上床睡觉(指与“床”有关的活动,即睡觉)

go to the bed 到床边去(指“床”这个具体的东西)

be in school 在上学(指与“学校”有关的活动,即读书)

be in the school 在这所学校里(指“学校”这个地方)

考点 17 people / the people / a people

(1) people 泛指“人们,人”,是集合名词,不能指一个人,用单数形式表示复数意义,谓语的动词要用复数。如:

There are eight people in the office. 办公室里有8个人。

(2) the people 指“人民”,可指某个国家的人民或全世界的人民,它表示复数概念。如果 the people 作主语,它的谓语的动词要用复数。如:

Long live the people! 人民万岁!

(3) a people 指一个国家或地区的“民族”,其复数形式为 peoples,表示许多国家或地区的不

同的“民族”。如：

The Chinese is a peace-loving people. 中华民族是个热爱和平的民族。

考点 18 agree with / agree to / agree on

(1) agree with 表示“同意某人的观点或意见”，它的后面接人或某人所说的话，也可以接某种表示“意见，看法”的词，侧重于“赞成”。如：

I don't agree with him. 我不同意他的看法。

Personally, I'd prefer to agree with Mr. Clinton's view.

就我个人而言，我宁可同意克林顿先生的观点。

(2) agree to 表示“同意某事”，其后跟表示提议、计划、办法、要求、条件、安排等词，侧重于“同意”。agree to do 则表示“答应做某事”。如：

She doesn't agree to this arrangement. 她不同意这个安排。

My mother agreed to buy a new pen for me. 我妈妈答应了给我买一支新钢笔。

(3) agree on 表示“关于……达成一致”，指双方或多方在某件事上取得一致的意见，常与日期、条件、价格等名词连用。如：

We all agreed on an early start. 我们都同意早动身。

考点 19 allow / let / permit

(1) allow 意为“允许”，指允许某人做某事，不反对某人做某事，含有任由、默许、不加以阻止的意思。如：

Please allow me to carry your bag. 请让我替你拿提包。

(2) permit 表示“允许，容许”，语气较强，强调正式认可、批准之意，含有积极的正面意义。如：

Do you permit us to open the case? 您允许我们打开这只箱子吗？

(3) let 表示“让，允许”，较口语化，常可与 allow 互换，但祈使句中只用 let。let 后的宾补为不带 to 的不定式，且一般不用于被动语态。如：

Let me help you. 让我帮你吧。

考点 20 appear / look / seem

(1) appear 表示“似乎，显得，好像”，指外表给人的印象，一般与实际情况不相符，其后不可接 like, as if/as though 引导的表语从句，但可接不定式或 that 从句，也可用于 there be 句型中。如：

Why does she appear so sad? 她为何显得如此悲伤？

There appears to have been a mistake. 看起来有错误。

(2) look 表示“看来像是，出现某种样子”，多指视觉印象，所得出的判断可能是事实也可能是假象。look 可以用于句型 look like 和 look as if/ though...，但不能用于 there be 句型中。如：

She looks like a teacher. 她看起来像个老师。

(3) seem 表示“似乎，好像”，常指根据某种迹象作出的判断，这种判断往往与实际情况相近或相符。seem 后可接动词不定式，as if/though 引导的从句和 that 从句，还可用于 there be 句型中，但不能用于进行时。如：

He seems to have many friends. 他似乎有很多朋友。

It seems that no one knew what had happened. 似乎没人知道发生过什么事。

考点 21 try to do sth. / manage to do sth.



- (1) try to do sth. 表示“尽力、设法做某事”，不强调结果。如：

Next term I'll try to do better. I'll speak more English and do more reading aloud. 下学期我要做得好一些。我要多讲英语，多大声朗读。

- (2) manage to do sth. “设法办到，完成”，相当于 succeed in doing sth.，强调经过努力最终完成某件困难的事。如：

Jim had a lot of homework, but he managed to finish it before bedtime. 吉姆有许多家庭作业，但他设法在睡觉前做完了。

考点 22 be known as / be known by / be known for / be known to

- (1) be known as 意思为“以……著称”或“被公认为……”，其后接表示身份的名词。如：

He is known as a successful engineer. 他被公认为是一个成功的工程师。

- (2) be known by 意为“凭……而知名”，by 表示手段或标准。如：

A man is known by what he says. 闻其言而知其人。

- (3) be known for 意为“因……而出名”，for 表示原因。如：

This town is known for its handwork. 这个城市以其手工制品闻名。

- (4) be known to 意为“为……所熟知”，to 后接表示人的代词或名词。如：

Do you want to be known to many people? 你希望许多人都知道你吗？

考点 23 repair / mend / fix

- (1) repair 多用于指修理比较庞大的物体或复杂的东西，它的对象范围很广，从房屋、道路、机器到日常生活必需品，使受到一定损失或失灵的东西恢复其形状或功能。如：

This TV set has to be repaired. 这台电视机必须修理。

- (2) mend 指“修理，修补”或“织补”，可以用来表示对打破、撕破、穿破的物品或衣服进行修理或修补，使其恢复某物原来的样子，多用于指修理结构简单的小东西。如：

Mother mended my socks yesterday. 昨天妈妈补好了我的袜子。

- (3) repair 和 mend 都是“修理”的意思，它们可以换用，但指需要较高的职业技能和使用较复杂的工具进行修理时多用 repair。mend 通常指简单的修复过程，不需要专门技术或特殊工具。如：

Because I am going to repair/mend my bike, I need a hammer. 因为我将修理我的自行车，我需要一把锤子。

He has never managed to get enough money to have the church clock repaired. 他从未能够弄到足够的钱来修理教堂的大钟。

- (4) fix 侧重于“安装”，也可表示“修理”，用于需要重新“调”物体的结构，把松散的部件固定结实，将分离的物体各部分安装起来。用于美国口语中，fix 与 repair 无多大区别。如：

The rain's coming. We have to fix the roof. 雨水进来了。我们得把屋顶修理一下。

考点 24 be used for / be used by / be used as

- (1) be used for 意为“被用来……”，介词 for 表示用途。如：

It is used for keeping the water warm. 它被用来保持水温。

- (2) be used by 意为“被……使用”，介词 by 后接动作的执行者，此结构为 use 的被动形式。如：

English is used by people from different countries. 英语被不同国家的人使用。

- (3) be used as 意为“被用作……”，介词 as 后通常接名词，表示“作为”。如：

A red lamp is used as a danger signal. 红灯被用做危险信号。

考点 25 beat / win / defeat

(1) beat 为及物动词,意思是“击败,优于,胜过”,后接人,表示在战斗或竞赛中战胜、打败对手。如:

We beat them by the score of 5 to 3. 我们以 5:3 的比分击败了他们。

(2) win 可作及物动词和不及物动词,意思是“赢得,获胜”。当它作及物动词时,其后常接比赛、战争、奖学金、奖品或表示崇拜、尊重等词。如:

I don't know who will win. 我不知道谁会赢。

Our hope is to win the game. 我们的期望是赢得这场比赛。

(3) defeat 为及物动词,表示在比赛中“战胜,击败”对手,在战争中“战胜,击败”敌人,后接人作宾语。如:

Our class defeated theirs in the basketball match yesterday.

昨天我们班在篮球赛中赢了他们班。

考点 26 start / begin

(1) start 作“开始”之意时,可用做及物动词和不及物动词,在大多数情况下可以和 begin 通用(在口语中 start 较常用)。start 和 begin 后可接不定式,也可接动名词,差别不大。如:

When did you begin to learn/learning Japanese? 你是什么时候开始学日语的?

(2) start 作“动身,发动,开办,使……吓了一跳”解时,不可用 begin 代替。如:

The company was started by the two brothers. 这家公司是由兄弟俩创办的。

At last the train started. 火车终于启动了。

考点 27 believe / believe in

(1) believe 意为“相信”,通常指相信某人所说的话,其后接某人或从句。当它表示“认为”时,可接复合宾语或从句。如:

I believe her. = I believe what she says. 我相信她(的话)。

People used to believe that the world was flat. 从前人们认为地球是扁平的。

(2) believe in 意为“相信……的存在,信任,信仰”,当 believe in 表示“信任”时,相当于 trust。如:

I believe in that man. = I trust that man. 我信任那个人。

考点 28 borrow / lend / keep

(1) borrow 意为“借来,借入”,与介词 from 连用,即 borrow sth. from sb. (从某人那里借来某物)。如:

I borrowed the car from Tom yesterday. 我昨天从汤姆那里借来了这辆车。

(2) lend 意为“借出”,与介词 to 连用或接双宾语,即 lend sth. to sb. 或 lend sb. sth. (把某物借给某人)。

Mary lent one hundred yuan to me. 玛丽借给了我 100 元钱。

(3) keep 意为“借用”,是持续性动词,可与一段时间连用。而 borrow 和 lend 为瞬间性动词,不可以与一段时间连用。如:

You can keep it for three weeks. 你可以借三个星期。

考点 29 bring / take / fetch / carry

(1) bring 意为“带来,拿来,领来”,指将某人或某物从其他地方带到、拿到或领到说话者的地方,由远及近。如:

Please bring him to the office tomorrow. 明天请把他带到办公室来。



(2) take 意为“拿走，带走”，与 bring 的方向相反，指将某人或某物从说话者的地方带走或拿走。如：

Please take the book to the office. 请将这本书带到办公室去。

(3) fetch 意为“去拿，去取，去接”，指从说话者的地方到某地将某物拿回到说话者所在的地点，含有一去一来的意思。如：

Please go to the teachers' office to fetch your books. 请到老师的办公室将你们的书取来。

(4) carry 表示“携带，搬运”，这一单词本身没有方向性。如：

He was carrying a box on his shoulder. 他的肩上扛着一个箱子。

考点 30 build / set up / put up

(1) build 意为“建设，建造，建立”，含义比较广泛，既可指具体建造某物，如房屋、桥梁、道路等，也可表示抽象事物的建立或建造。如：

Mr. Smith is building a garage for me. 史密斯先生正替我建车库。

We must build our country at high speed. 我们必须高速度地建设国家。

(2) set up 也可表示“设立，建立”，但它是指组织、机构、公司、学校等的建立。它还可以表示“竖立”，指把某物竖起来或架起来。如：

The government was set up to make laws. 政府是为制定法规而建立的。

A few scarecrows were set up in the field. 田里竖起了几个稻草人。

(3) put up 意为“建造，搭建”，着重指建造或搭起具有高度的具体物体，在口语中与 set up 和 build 可互换。如：

They put up a tent. 他们搭起了一个帐篷。

(4) 作“建造，修建”讲时，build, set up, put up 三者可以互换。表示“建造，搭建”时，set up 与 put up 可以换用。如：

We're going to build/ set up / put up a building here. 我们打算在这里盖一座楼。

考点 31 wear / put on / dress / have on/ try on/ be in

(1) wear “穿着，戴着”，表示状态，宾语可以是衣帽，也可以是饰物、奖章等。如：

He is wearing a black jacket. 他穿着黑色的夹克。

(2) put on “穿上，戴上”，强调动作，后接衣服、鞋帽等。

He put on his watch and then left home. 他戴上手表，然后离开了家。

(3) dress 的宾语通常是人，意思是“给……穿衣服”。dress oneself 或 get dressed 表示给自己穿衣服。dress 还可以作名词，表示“连衣裙”。如：

I wash his face and hands, and then I dress him. 我给他洗脸、洗手，然后给他穿衣服。

Jim isn't old enough to dress himself. 吉姆还未到自己会穿衣服的年龄。

(4) have on 的意思是“穿着，戴着”，指穿的状态，不用于进行时态。如：

I'll have on black pants and a gray shirt tomorrow. 明天我会穿一条黑色的长裤和一件灰色的衬衫。

(5) try on 意思为“试穿”，是“动词+副词”型短语，若用代词作宾语，该代词应位于 try 和 on 之间。如：

Let me try it on. 让我试穿一下。

(6) be in 表示穿着的状态。介词 in 后接表示颜色或服饰的名词。in 短语通常在句中作定语或表语。如：

Mary is in white. 玛丽穿着白色的衣服。

The man in a top hat is Tom's father. 那个戴着高顶礼帽的男子是汤姆的爸爸。

考点 32 study / learn

(1) study 意为“学习，研究”，侧重学习的过程，表示深入系统地学习，含有研究、努力、勤奋的意思。学习对象通常为科学、艺术和需要深入探讨、研究的问题及学科，不是单纯地获得技能。如：

If you study hard, you'll pass the exam. 如果你努力学习，你就会通过考试。

The professor set out to study the customs of the natives. 教授着手研究当地居民的风俗人情。

(2) learn 意为“学会，学习”，侧重学习的成果，表示从不会到会，从不知到知。没有靠勤奋、努力获得知识的意思，而是指通过学习获得知识。它还可以指向某人学习，从某处学习及学习一门技能等。如：

He is learning to swim. 他在学游泳。

We can learn what we did not know. 我们能学会我们原来不懂的东西。

We should learn from Lei Feng. 我们应该向雷锋学习。

考点 33 say / tell / speak / talk

(1) say 为及物动词，意为“说，说到”，多指用语言表达自己的思想，强调说话的内容，其后可以接名词、代词或 that 引导的从句作宾语。表示对某人说，往往与介词 to 连用。如：

He said to me, "I'm going to Beijing." 他对我说：“我要去北京。”

(2) tell 意为“告诉，讲述”，多指以口头的方式将某事告诉某人，或指连续地叙说。有时表示嘱咐或语气较轻的命令，往往使用 tell sb. (not) to do sth. 结构。表达“告诉某人某事”可用 tell sb. sth. / tell sb. about sth. / tell sth. to sb. 结构。如：

My classmate told me something about his father. 我同学告诉了我一些有关他爸爸的事情。

The teacher told me not to be late. 老师让我别再迟到。

(3) speak 表示“说话，演讲”，着重指开口发言、说话的动作，不强调说话的内容，一般为不及物动词，可用 speak to sb. “同某人说话”，为及物动词时宾语是表示语言的名词。如：

Please speak more slowly. 请说话慢一点。

I can speak English. 我会说英语。

(4) talk 表示“谈话，谈论”，常指互相连续地交谈，一般用作不及物动词。talk to/with sb. about sth. “与某人谈论某事”。如：

What is he talking to his friend about? 他在跟他朋友谈什么？

考点 34 receive / accept

(1) receive 表示“收到，接到”，指客观上收到，被动地接受。如：

I received a Christmas present yesterday. 昨天我收到了一份圣诞节礼物。

(2) accept 意为“接受”，表示主观上的接受。如：

I didn't accept Jim's present. 我没有接受吉姆的礼物。

考点 35 wish / hope

(1) wish 意思是“希望，想要”，可用于下列结构：wish to do sth. 希望做某事；wish sb. to do sth. 希望某人做某事；wish 后还可以接从句。wish 表示愿望时，侧重表达不太可能实现的事情。wish 还有“祝愿”的意思，用于祝福语中，常用结构为“wish sb. + 名词”。如：

Do you really wish me to go? 你真的希望我去吗？



He wishes us a happy new year. 他祝我们新年快乐。

(2) hope 表示“希望”，多引导宾语从句，表示希望的事物有可能实现，常用句型是 hope to do sth.，hope + that 从句。如：

We hope to see you soon. 我们希望不久能见到你。

I hope you haven't hurt yourself. 我希望你没有受伤。

考点 36 do with / deal with

do with 和 deal with 都可以表示“处理，对付”，一般可以换用，但在疑问句中，do with 要与 what 连用，而 deal with 则需与 how 搭配。另外 do with 还可以表示“容忍，将就”；deal with 还可表示“与……相处，与……交易，论述，涉及”。如：

I don't know how they deal with the problem. = I don't know what they do with the problem.

我不知道他们如何处理这个问题。

考点 37 reach/get/arrive

(1) get 为不及物动词，表示到达某地时，加 to 后接表示地点的名词，若为地点副词，则不要介词 to，如 get here/there/home。如：

When did you get there? 你什么时候到那儿的？

When did you get to Beijing? 你什么时候到北京的？

(2) reach 为及物动词，表示到达某地时，后面直接接地点名词。如：

He reached Nanjing at noon. 他是中午到达南京的。

(3) arrive 为不及物动词，可单独使用，表示到达某地时，后面必须加介词 in 或 at。到达较大的地方用 in，到达较小的地方用 at。但 arrive 后面跟地点副词时，就不加介词。

I arrived home at 7:00. 我7点钟到家。

They have arrived in Wuhan. 他们已经到了武汉。

The doctor arrived at the village at last. 医生终于到达了那个村子。

When he arrived, please tell me. 他到了请告诉我。

考点 38 forget / leave

(1) forget 表示“忘记”，强调从某人的记忆里消失，常见结构有：forget sth. /sb. 忘记某事/某人；forget to do sth. 忘记要做某事（动作未做）；forget doing sth. 忘记做了某事（动作已做）。如：

I've forgotten her name. 我忘记了她的名字。

He forgot to post the letter. 他忘了去寄信。

He forgot posting the letter. 他忘记寄过信了。

(2) leave 通常与表示地点的副词或短语连用，即“leave sth. + 地点”，表示“把某物忘在了某地”。如：

I left my umbrella on the bus. 我把伞忘在公交车上了。

考点 39 go on doing sth. / go on to do sth. / go on with sth.

(1) go on doing sth. 表示继续、不间断地做某事。如：

You can't go on working without a break. 你不能不停地工作而不休息。

(2) go on to do sth. 表示做完一件事后接着做另外的事。如：

Shall we go on to discuss another question? 我们要继续讨论另一个问题吗？

(3) go on with 表示间断后继续做原来没有做完的事。如：

Go on with your work, children! 孩子们, 继续做作业吧!

考点 40 hear / listen to

(1) hear 表示“听到, 听见”, 强调听见了, 强调听的结果, 不用于进行时态, 常用结构有: hear sb. do sth. 听到某人做了某事; hear sb. doing sth. 听到某人正在做某事。如:

I heard him singing in the next room. 我听到他在隔壁唱歌。

I can hear you. 我能听到你说话。

(2) listen 表示“听”, 指集中注意力听, 强调听的动作, 可以用于进行时态, 其后若接宾语, 要加介词 to。如:

The students are listening to their teacher. 学生们正在听他们的老师讲课。

考点 41 find / find out / discover / look for / invent

(1) find 意为“找到, 发现”, 强调寻找的结果, 为非持续性动词, 不能与一段时间连用。如:

Have you found the book you borrowed from Tom? 你找到从汤姆那里借来的书了吗?

(2) find out 意为“查明, 弄清”, 指通过研究、探索而发现事实的真相, 多指抽象的东西。如:

I'll find out the address, and ring you back. 我找到地址后再与你通电话。

(3) discover 意为“发现”, 侧重指偶然发现原来就存在但一直未被认识的东西, 表示重大发现。如:

We soon discovered the truth. 我们很快发现了真相。

(4) look for 意为“寻找”, 指有意识地寻找某人或某物, 强调寻找的动作。如:

He says it is time to look for solutions. 他说, 现在是寻找解决方法的时候了。

(5) invent 意为“创造, 发明”, 指研制出世上没有的东西。如:

When was the steam engine invented? 蒸汽机是何时发明的?

考点 42 join / join in / take part in / attend

(1) join 指加入某组织或团体, 成为其成员之一, 如入党、入团、参军。如:

He joined the army in 2006. 他在 2006 年参军。

(2) join in 指参加比赛或活动等, 常用于日常口语。如:

Why don't you join in the games? 你为什么不参加运动会?

(3) take part in 指参加会议或群众性的活动等, 强调参加者在活动中起着积极的作用。如:

We are very happy to have the chance to take part in the sports meet.

我们为有机会参加这个运动会感到很高兴。

(4) attend 为及物动词, 是正式用语, 指参加会议、仪式、婚礼、典礼、上学、听报告等, 参加者往往作为听众或观众, 不在活动中起作用。如:

Would you like to attend my birthday party this Saturday? 你这个星期六愿意参加我的生日派对吗?

考点 43 pay / take / cost / spend

(1) pay 指花费时, 一般指花钱, 主语为人。表示“为某物支付……钱”, 用 pay + (money+) for sth. 结构。如:

I paid 100 yuan for the dictionary. 我花 100 元买了这本字典。

(2) take 指花费时, 一般指时间, 通常用于句型 It takes/took sb. (some time) to do sth. (某

人花了多久做某事)。如:

It took me 3 days to finish the work. 我花了 3 天的时间完成了这项工作。

(3) cost 指花费时, 主语是物。sth. cost sb. (money) 表示“某物花了某人多少钱”。如:

The dress cost her 185 yuan. 这条裙子花了她 185 元。

(4) spend 指花费时, 指花时间或钱, 其主语为人。spend (money/time) on sth. / (in) doing sth. 意为“在(做)某事上花费了多少时间或金钱”。如:

Don't spend too much money on clothes. 别把太多的钱花在服装上。

We spent a day in visiting the factory. 我们花了一天的时间参观这个工厂。

考点 44 see / watch / look at

(1) see 意为“看见, 看到”, 强调结果。如:

I saw Liu Ming playing on the playground. 我看见刘明正在操场上玩。

(2) watch 意为“看, 观察”, 一般表示难以看清的事物, 强调观看事物的变化、移动或发展。如:

Watch what I do and how I do it. 注意看我做什么以及如何做。

(3) look at 意为“看, 注视某物或某人”, 指集中注意力地看, 强调动作。如:

The students are looking at the blackboard. 学生们正看着黑板。

考点 45 get / turn / become

(1) 三者作为系动词都有“变得”之意, 但是具体用法有区别。get 用于日常用语, 通常跟随比较级。如:

It gets colder. 天越来越冷了。

(2) turn 指在颜色和性质等方面变得与原来不同。如:

Her face turned red. 她的脸变红了。

(3) become 指身份、职业的变化, 作瞬间性动词指状态的变化。如:

He has become a teacher for 5 years. 他当老师 5 年了。

考点 46 call at / call on

二者都有“拜访”之意, 但是 call at 后接地点, 表示到某地拜访某人; call on 后接人, 表示对某人进行短暂的拜访。如:

Next week, I will call at Tom's home. 下周我将去汤姆家拜访他。

Next week, I will call on Tom. 下周我将去拜访汤姆。

考点 47 asleep / sleepy / sleeping / fall sleep

(1) asleep 意为“睡着的”, 强调睡着的状态。它是表语形容词, 在句中不能作定语, 只能作表语或宾语补足语。如:

He was asleep at his post of duty. 他在执勤的岗位上睡着了。

(2) sleepy 意为“困倦的, 欲睡的”, 是形容词, 常与 be, feel 等动词搭配, 可作表语、定语和补语。如:

I felt sleepy all day. 我整天都犯困。

(3) sleeping 意为“在睡觉的, 睡着的”, 为动词的现在分词, 作定语, 强调动作。它还可以作动名词, 表示“睡眠”。如:

He awoke the sleeping child. 他把那个睡着的孩子弄醒了。

Asia is awaking from her long sleeping. 亚洲正从长期沉睡中觉醒。

(4) fall asleep 意为“睡着了”，是动词词组，表示动作的过程，不能和表示一段时间的状语连用。如：

He lay down on the sofa and soon fell asleep. 他躺在沙发上很快就睡着了。

考点 48 alone / lonely

(1) alone 意为“单独的，独自一个人的”，指单独这一事实，无感情色彩，为表语形容词。它还可以作副词，表示“独自地，单独地”。如：

Are you living alone? 你一个人住吗？

(2) lonely 为形容词，意为“寂寞的，孤独的”，可作表语或定语，强调人内心的寂寞、孤独，有强烈的感情色彩。如：

They lived a lonely life. 他们过着寂寞的生活。

考点 49 all / whole

(1) all 意为“所有的，全部的”，指一个不剩，即“全部”。它可修饰可数名词或不可数名词，通常放在定冠词、物主代词、指示代词之前。如：

He has lived all his life in London. 他一生都住在伦敦。

All five men are hard workers. 他们 5 个人都是肯苦干的人。

(2) whole 表示“整个的，整体的”，指一点也不缺，即“整个”。它一般用于修饰单数可数名词，但是若复数可数名词前有具体的数量词时，也可用 whole。whole 通常放在定冠词、物主代词、指示代词之后。如：

There isn't a whole plate in the house. 家里竟然没有一只完整的盘子。

I waited for three whole hours/all three hours. 我等了整整 3 个小时。

考点 50 huge / large / big / great

(1) huge 表示“大的，巨大的”，强调容量和数量巨大，尺寸、体积庞大，指体积时，比 large, great 所指的体积大，不强调重量。如：

I don't think I can manage a huge fish like that. 我看我吃不了这么大一条鱼。

(2) large 强调远远超过标准的大，可指数量、容量、体积、面积和范围的大，比 big 正式，反义词是 small。如：

Beijing and Shanghai are two large cities in China. 北京和上海是中国的两大城市。

(3) big 用得比较广泛，除有 large 的用法外，还可以表示“巨大的，伟大的，重要的”，反义词是 little 或 small。如：

Mr. Smith manages a big shop. 史密斯先生经营一家大商店。

(4) great 表示“大的，极大的，伟大的”，通常指抽象的事物，可表示数量、距离和程度的大，修饰人时，表示“伟大的，杰出的”。如：

The man was a great painter. 那个人是个伟大的画家。

He made great progress after college. 他大学毕业后取得了很大的进步。

考点 51 famous for / famous as

(1) famous for 表示“因为……而著名”，介词 for 后接出名的原因。如：

This country is famous for its beautiful lakes. 这个国家以其美丽的湖泊而闻名于世。

(2) famous as 表示“作为……而出名”，as 后接表示身份的名词。如：

Walt Disney is famous as a cartoon-maker. 沃尔特·迪斯尼是一位著名的动画制作人。

考点 52 sure / certain

(1) sure 和 certain 都可表示“肯定的, 确信的, 有把握的”的意思, 通常可以互换。但在 it 作形式主语代替从句时, it 后的表语只能用 certain。作定语时, certain 表示“某一, 某些, 某种, 有点, 有些”。“I'm certain...”表示“我深信(确信)……”, 强调的则是客观事实, 意为主语已经知道后面的内容是既定的事实。如:

It is certain that two and two makes four. 二加二得四是确定无疑的。

I'm certain that she saw me. 我确信她看见了我。

Many people do not like certain foods, for example, I don't like the cabbage.

许多人不喜欢吃某种食物, 例如, 我就不喜欢吃圆白菜。

(2) sure 可用在祈使句中, 表示“务必, 一定”, certain 却不能。作定语时, sure 表示“可靠的, 无误的”, “I'm sure...”意思也为“我深信(确信)……”, 但表示一种主观上的判断或感觉, 事实并不一定如此。如:

I'm sure you will do well. 我相信你会做好的。

Be sure to write and give me all the news. 务必写信告诉我所有的消息。

考点 53 high / tall

(1) high 通常用来形容物体的高度。形容建筑物或山高时, tall 和 high 都可以, 但指一个非常庞大的建筑物时, 用 high, 因为 high 在程度上要大于 tall。high 还可作副词, 表示“高, 高度地”。如:

There was a plane high in the sky. 有一架飞机飞在高高的天空上。

(2) tall 只能作形容词, 通常指人、动物、树、建筑物等的高度, 强调高度超过宽度。如:

She is taller than her sister. 她比她姐姐高。

考点 54 ill / sick

(1) ill 为形容词, 作表语时, 意思是“生病的, 不健康的”; 作定语时, 意思是“不好的, 不祥的”。如:

Although he was ill, he worked hard. 尽管他生病了, 但仍然努力工作。

He had ill luck. 他遭到厄运。

(2) sick 也是形容词, 表示“有病的, 生病的”, 既可作表语也可作定语。sick 还可以表示“呕吐, 恶心, 厌恶的”。表示生病时, 美国人多用 sick, 英国人多用 ill。如:

He has been sick for six weeks. 他已经病了六周了。

He is a sick man. 他是个病人。

考点 55 black / dark

(1) black 意思为“黑的, 黑色(的)”, 指颜色, 为形容词, 反义词为 white。如:

After the fight, he was black and blue all over. 打架过后, 他浑身青一块紫一块。

(2) dark 意为“暗, 天黑, 黑暗”, 指无光, 放在表示颜色的词之前, 表示“深色的, 暗色的”。如:

It's getting too dark to take photos. 天色太暗, 不能照相。

考点 56 very / much

(1) very 为副词, 修饰形容词、副词的原级, 它不可直接修饰动词作状语, 且没有比较等级。当它用于形容词最高级之前表示“完全的, 极度的, 极点的”, 置于定冠词之后。very 还可以修饰现在分词和形容词化的过去分词。如:

He was very interested. 他很感兴趣。

This is the very lowest price. 这是最低的价格。

(2) much 作副词时, 修饰形容词、副词的比较级和最高级, 置于定冠词之前, 用来加深程度, 意为“……得多, 更……”。它还可以修饰动词作状语或动词的过去分词, 表示“非常, 很”, 其否定形式表示“不太……, 不大……”。much 作形容词时, 修饰不可数名词。如:

You must work much harder. 你必须更加努力。

This is much the best. 这是最好的了。

I wasn't much surprised at the news. 我对那消息不太惊讶。

I enjoyed the concert (very) much. 我很喜欢那个音乐会。

He doesn't like the beef much. 他不太喜欢牛肉。

考点 57 ago / before

(1) ago 表示以现在为起点的“一段时间以前”, 不能单独使用, 并且通常与过去时连用。如:

The train left a few minutes ago. 火车在几分钟之前开走了。

(2) before 泛指“以前”, 可单独使用, 常与完成时连用; 或表示从过去某时刻往前推算的一段时间以前, before 前接一段时间, 通常与过去完成时态连用; before 后接表示时间的词时, 为介词。如:

I have seen that film before. 我以前看过那部电影。

It had been fine the day before. 前一天的天气很好。

考点 58 almost / nearly

(1) almost 表示“几乎, 差一点就, 差不多”, 与动词、副词、形容词、名词连用。在肯定句中, 在行为动词的否定式前或 all, always, every 之前, 可与 nearly 通用。almost 可修饰 no, never, any, none, more than, too 以及由 no 或 any 组成的合成词, 表示“几乎, 差不多”, 不能与 nearly 通用。如:

That is a mistake he almost/nearly always makes. 那是一个他几乎经常犯的错误。

The speaker said almost nothing worth listening to. 那发言者所说的话几乎没有一句值得听的。

(2) nearly 表示“几乎, 将近”通常可以与 almost 换用。但被 very, not, pretty 修饰时, 或表示要做什么但后来“没有做”或“避开不做”时, 只能用 nearly, 不能用 almost。如:

It's nearly/almost one o'clock. 将近 1 点钟了。

It's not nearly so important as you think. 这远不如你所想的那么重要。

考点 59 aloud / loud / loudly

(1) aloud 为副词, 表示“出声地, 高声地”。通常与 read, think 连用, 强调发出的声音能被听见。如:

Please read the story aloud. 请大声朗读这个故事。

(2) loud 为副词或形容词。作副词时, 表示“高声地, 大声地”, 通常与 talk, shout, laugh 连用, 强调发出的声音大, 传得远, 在口语中代替 loudly; 作形容词时, 表示“高声的, 喧闹的, 响亮的”。如:

Don't talk so loud. 不要如此高声谈话。

(3) loudly 为副词, 表示“高声地, 喧闹地, 刺目地”。它的意义与 loud 基本一致, 还常与 knock, ring 等动词连用。如:

Someone knocked loudly at the door. 有人大声敲了门。

考点 60 also / too / either

(1) also 表示“也, 亦, 并且”, 用于肯定句中, 通常放在实义动词之前, 助动词之后。如:

Tony has been to America. Lily has also been to America. 托尼去过美国, 莉莉也去过美国。

(2) too 表示“也”, 用于肯定句中, 通常置于句末。如:

Tony has been to America. Lily has been to America, too. 托尼去过美国, 莉莉也去过美国。

(3) either 表示“也”, 多用于否定句中, 通常置于句末。如:

Tony hasn't been to America. Lily hasn't been to America, either.

托尼没去过美国, 莉莉也没去过美国。

考点 61 close / closely

(1) close 可作形容词、副词、动词以及名词。当它作副词时, 表示“接近地, 靠近地, 紧紧地”, 为具体距离概念; 作形容词时, 表示“近的(指时间或空间), 紧密的, 详尽的, 亲密的”; 作动词表示“关, 闭”; 作名词, 表示“死胡同”。如:

He stood close against the wall. 他紧靠墙壁而立。

Mary is my close friend. 玛丽是我的密友。

(2) closely 表示“接近地, 紧密地, 严密地, 密切地”, 多指抽象含义。如:

I am following the matter closely. 我正密切关注这件事。

考点 62 sometime / sometimes / some time / some times

(1) sometime 为时间副词, 表示过去或将来的“某时, 某一时间”。如:

I will speak to him about it sometime. 我将找个时间同他谈此事。

(2) sometimes 意为“有时”, 是频率副词。如:

Sometimes we go to the cinema and at other times we go for a walk.

我们有时去看电影, 有时去散步。

(3) some time 指“一段时间”, 是名词短语, 其中的 time 可理解为“时间”。如:

We've still got some time for a cup of coffee, 我们还有喝咖啡的时间。

(4) some times 表示“几次”, 是名词短语, time 在此表示“次数”。如:

I called you some times yesterday, but there were no replies.

我昨天给你打了几次电话但没有打通。

考点 63 fast / quickly / soon

(1) fast 指运动着的人或物体具有的速度快之特点。如:

It was raining fast. 雨下得很大。

(2) quickly 侧重动作发生得快, 事情完成得快, 总共延续的时间很短, 常指人的行动迅速, 反应敏捷。如:

He quickly changed his clothes. 他快速地换了衣服。

(3) soon 指现在或指定时间之后的不久。如:

We shall soon be home. 我们不久就要到家。

考点 64 farther / further

(1) farther 为 far 的比较级, 只能表示具体距离的“更远”。如:

I can throw the ball farther/further than you can. 我扔球能比你扔得远。

(2) further 也是 far 的比较级, 但它不仅可表示具体距离的远, 还可用于引申义, 表示“更进一步, 更多”。如:

Are there any further questions? 还有问题吗?

考点 65 hard / hardly

(1) hard 作副词, 表示“努力地, 费力地, 剧烈地, 猛烈地”。作形容词, hard 表示“坚硬的, 困难的, 严厉的”。如:

You should study hard. 你应该努力学习。

(2) hardly 为副词, 表示“几乎没有, 几乎不”, 含有否定意义。如:

He hardly ever goes to bed before midnight. 他很少在午夜以前就寝。

考点 66 late / lately

(1) late 既可作副词也可作形容词, 表示时间上的“迟, 晚”, 与 early 相对。如:

The train was 10 minutes late. 火车晚点 10 分钟。

He often sits up late to prepare for the examination. 他为准备考试经常熬到深夜。

(2) lately 为副词, 表示“近来, 最近”, 通常用于否定句和疑问句中, 或与 only 连用, 或用于短语 as lately as 中。如:

Have you seen Sam lately? 你最近见过山姆吗?

考点 67 no more / no longer

(1) no more 意为“不再”, 等于 not... any more, 表示数量或程度的不再增加, 修饰终止性动词, 表示动作不再发生, 多用于将来时。如:

Time lost will return no more. = Time lost won't return any more. 时间一去不复返。

(2) no longer 等于 not... any longer, 表示时间或距离上的“不再”延续, 修饰延续动词, 表示动作的不再延续, 多用于现在时。如:

He is no longer a young man. = He isn't a young man any longer. 他不再是个年轻人了。

考点 68 too much / much too

(1) too much 表示“过多, 太多, 过分”, 其中心词为 much。too much 可作形容词后接不可数名词或单独使用。如:

There is too much noise in this class. 这课堂太嘈杂了。

You are asking too much. 你要求得过分了。

He thinks too much of himself. 他自视过高。

(2) much too 意为“太, 非常”, 其中心词为 too, 后接形容词或副词的原级, much 用于 too 前加强语气。如:

These shoes are much too small for me. 这些鞋子我穿太小了。

考点 69 another / other / others / the other / the others

(1) another 指三个或三个以上之中的“另外一个, 不同的一个”, 其后可接单数名词或“大于 one 的基数词 + 复数名词”。如:

Will you have another cup of tea? 你再喝一杯茶吗?

I don't like this hat. Please show me another. 我不喜欢这顶帽子。请再给我拿一顶看看。

If you give me another ten minutes, I'll finish it. 如果你再给我 10 分钟, 我就会做完。

(2) other 表示“其余的人或物”, 后接复数名词。它的复数形式为 others, 意为“另外的一些……”, 相当于“other + 复数名词”, 必须单独使用。如:

The children were filling their bags with toys and other things. 孩子们用玩具和别的东西把袋子装满了。

Some are dancing. Others are singing. 一些人在跳舞, 另一些人在唱歌。

(3) the other 表示“两者/两部分中的另一个/另一部分”, 可单独使用, 也可修饰名词, 其复数形式为 the others, 特指“另外的全部人和物”, 相当于“the other + 复数名词”, 必须单独使用。如:

One of them is mine; the other is my sister's. 两个之中一个是我的, 另一个是我姐姐的。

Where are the other boys? 其他的男孩子在哪儿?

Six of them are mine; the others are John's. 其中 6 个是我的, 其余的是约翰的。

考点 70 one / it / that

(1) one 可指人也可指物，单独使用时，泛指“人”“一个人”或“人们”，还可泛指前面提到的名词同类当中的一个，并非被替代名词的本身，其前可有 this, the, that 或形容词修饰，复数形式为 ones，所有格为 one's。the one 也可表示特指，代替可数名词单数。如：

One must be patient with one's children. 每个人必须对自己的孩子有耐心。

This problem is more difficult than that one. 这个问题比那个问题更难。

(2) it 用于指代上文出现过的特定事情，即同一事物，还可以指代上文提到的一件事。如：

—Where is the cat? 猫在哪里？—It is in the garden. 它在花园里。

(3) that 指同类事物中的一个，前面没有任何修饰词。当后面有 of 或 in 短语时，一般用 that 代替单数或不可数名词，用 those 代替复数可数名词。如：

The weather today in Beijing is better than that in Shanghai. 今天北京的天气比上海好。

考点 71 everyone / every one

(1) everyone 表示“每个人，人人”，只能指人，它比 every one 更常用。everyone 后面不能跟 of 短语。如：

Everyone was there but him. 除他外，所有的人都在。

(2) every one 指“每个，个个”，既可指人也可指物，其后可接 of 短语。如：

Every one of us loves peace. 我们每个人都热爱和平。

I like all the movies I saw last week, every one. 我喜欢我上周看的每一部电影。

考点 72 except for / except

(1) except for 多指排除前后不同类。如：

I had nothing on except for my socks. 我除了短袜什么都还没穿。

(2) except 意为“除……之外，但不包括……在内”，多用于引起同类事物中被排除的一项。常与 all, every, everyone, everything, nothing, none, nobody 等词连用。如：

Nobody was late except me. 除我以外无人迟到。

考点 73 in time / on time

(1) in time 意为“及时”。指在预定时间之内完成某事。如：

I just managed to get there in time. 我好不容易才及时赶到那里。

(2) on time 意为“按时，准时”。指正好在规定的时间内，既不提前也不推迟。如：

The train came in on time. 火车准时到达。

考点 74 at / on / in the corner

at the corner 指“在某建筑物外面的拐角处”；in the corner 指“在某建筑物里面的拐角处”；on the corner 指“在……的拐角上”。如：

I met him at the corner of the street. 我在街道拐角处遇到他。

He is sitting in the corner of the room. 他正坐在屋子的一角。

On the corner of the table there is a book. 在桌角处有一本书。

考点 75 about / on / of 表“关于”

about 侧重于人或事物有关的较详细的事迹或情况或涉及较小的问题；on 强调阐述相对重大深奥的政治、理论、学术等大问题；of 指谈到或提到过某人或某事。如：

I will tell her about her new job. 我将告诉她有关她的新工作的事情。

Those are books on education. 那些是有关教育的书籍。

I often think of you. 我常常想起你。

考点 76 at / for / by 表示计量

at 表示“以……速度，以……价格”，表示单价；for 表示“用……交换，以……为代价”，表示具体款项或总钱数；by 表示“以……计算”后接度量单位。如：

He ran at full speed. 他开足马力跑。

I sell fruits by the jin. 我按斤卖水果。

I bought the apples for ten yuan. 我买这些苹果花了10元钱。

考点 77 first / firstly / at first

(1) first 为序数词，前面加定冠词 the，意为“第一，第一的”，可用作名词或形容词。它还可作副词，表示“首先，第一，最先”。当它表示“第一名，冠军”时为名词。如：

He was the first to arrive. 他是第一个到达的人。

I must finish this work first. 我必须先完成这项工作。

He got a first in the modern language. 他在现代语言学一科得了第一名。

(2) firstly 只能用作副词，并只能用于列举事物和理由的场合。first 为副词时也可表达这一意思。它们没什么区别，可以互换。在现代英语中，firstly 不如 first 用得普遍，在列举事物时常用 Firstly...; secondly...; thirdly... 这样的顺序。如：

Firstly/First brush your teeth; secondly/ second wash your face. 你先刷牙，后洗脸。

(3) at first 意为“起初”，它有 at the beginning 的含义，主要相对“后来”而言。如：

At first he didn't agree, but later he did. 开始他不同意，但后来同意了。

考点 78 million / millions of / thousand / thousands of / hundred / hundreds of

(1) million “百万”、thousand “千”、hundred “百”的前面有具体的数字修饰时，表示具体的数目，不用复数，而且也不能与介词 of 搭配。若名词前有定冠词、指示代词或形容词性物主代词时，可加 of，但 of 表示的是范围。如：

About two million people die each year in the United States. 美国每年约有 200 万人死亡。

He bought the painting for ten thousand dollars. 他以 1 万美元买下这幅画。

Two hundred of the students went to the Great Wall. 学生中的两百人去了长城。

(2) millions of “数百万”、thousands of “数千”、hundreds of “数百”的前面不再加具体数目，表示约数，million, thousand, hundred 必须用复数形式。如：

They have been there millions of years. 它们已经在那里几百万年了。

Hundreds of trees were planted on the hillside last year. 去年在山坡上种了好几百棵树。

考点 79 a second / the second

(1) 当 second 等序数词与不定冠词 a 或 an 连用时，表示“再(一)，又(一)”，意思是在原来的数量上又增加了一个，不强调“第几次”的概念。second 还可以作可数名词，表示“片刻”或“秒”。如：

He ate a second apple. 他又吃了一个苹果。(吃了至少两个)

Darling, would you please wait a second? 亲爱的，稍等片刻好吗？

A spaceship flies at about eleven kilometers a second. 宇宙飞船每秒钟大约能飞行 11 千米。

(2) 当 first, second 等序数词与定冠词连用时，指先后的顺序，意为“第……次”。如：

The second is better than the first. 第二个比第一个好。

He ate the second apple. 他吃了第二个苹果。(第一个不是他吃的，他只吃了一个。)



真题再现

() 1. (济宁) Most British high school children _____ uniforms at school.

- A. wear B. dress
C. put on D. dress up

【解析】A. wear 表示“穿衣服”，强调状

态，dress 后接某人，put on 表穿衣的动作，dress up 意为“打扮”，故选 A。

() 2. (宜宾) I have two brothers. One is a teacher, _____ is a doctor.

- A. another B. other



C. others D. the ther

【解析】D。表“两者中的另一个”用 the other, 故选 D。

() 3. (重庆) The governments of Chongqing is building _____ cheap and good houses for the people.

A. thousand B. thousands
C. thousand of D. thousands of

【解析】D。thousand 前无具体数词时加 s



实战模拟

一、单项选择

() 1. —You look worried. What's your _____?

—I have trouble in learning English.

A. name B. question
C. problem D. job

() 2. I take violin _____ from Mr. Wang at school every day.

A. lesson B. lessons
C. class D. subject

() 3. _____ the students in this primary school is about three thousand, and _____ of them are girls.

A. A number of; two third
B. The number of; two thirds
C. A number of; two thirds
D. The number of; two third

() 4. She always wears beautiful _____.

A. clothes B. cloth
C. dress D. clothing

() 5. Please keep quiet. If you make a lot of _____, you may disturb others.

A. voice B. noise
C. sound D. singing

() 6. Tom regards Nanjing as his second _____ because he has been here for over ten years.

A. family B. room
C. house D. home

() 7. —Oh, there isn't enough _____ for us in the lift.

并接介词 of。

() 4. (福州) —I _____ 5, 000 yuan on this iPhone.

—Wow, so much! I can't afford it.

A. spent B. paid
C. cost

【解析】A。spend some money on sth. 在某物上花费(多少)钱。

—No hurry. Let's wait for the next.

A. floor B. ground
C. room D. place

() 8. It's difficult to get used to another country's _____.

A. customs B. habit
C. space D. custom

() 9. I found a _____ of socks in the room but only one was mine.

A. couple B. pair
C. double D. piece

() 10. “Have _____ try, you are so close to the answer,” the teacher encourages the kids.

A. the other B. one another
C. other D. another

() 11. —I phoned you at six last night, but _____ answered.

—I _____ a walk in the park at that time.

A. no one; was having
B. anyone; was having
C. nobody; had
D. somebody; had

() 12. My sister has two skirts. One is yellow, _____ is black.

A. other B. another
C. others D. the other

() 13. The American student could speak only _____ Chinese, but he managed to communicate with us.

- A. few B. little
C. a few D. a little
- () 14. —Who will send you to the new school, your mom or your dad?
—_____. I'll go there alone.
A. Both B. Either
C. Neither D. None
- () 15. I have got many collections of snow globes. You may take _____ if you like.
A. either B. one
C. it D. none
- () 16. There isn't _____ water in the glass. Let's go and get some.
A. many B. lots
C. any D. some
- () 17. —It's time to go. Is _____ here?
—No, Sam is still on the way.
A. no one B. everyone
C. someone D. anyone
- () 18. —Which of the two T-shirts will you take?
—I'll take _____, one for my mother, the other for myself.
A. either B. neither
C. all D. both
- () 19. —What else do you want?
—_____. I think I have got everything ready.
A. Nothing B. Anything
C. Something D. Everything
- () 20. —How are you going to the Summer Palace?
—We're going there _____ bike.
A. for B. with
C. of D. by
- () 21. The moon light is coming in _____ the window and the room seems quiet and beautiful.
A. across B. through
C. over D. by
- () 22. Come and see me _____ two day's time.
A. for B. in
C. after D. during
- () 23. I bought the book _____ 20 yuan.
A. for B. at
C. by D. to
- () 24. My brother is writing _____.
A. by a pencil B. with a pen
C. with pen D. in a pen
- () 25. The students have lessons every day _____ Sunday.
A. besides B. except
C. except for D. beside
- () 26. He came early and sat _____ the class in order to hear the teacher clearly.
A. in the front of B. in front of
C. on the front D. on front to
- () 27. Guangdong is _____ the south of China.
A. in B. to
C. at D. on
- () 28. This is the book _____ South Africa's politics.
A. about B. on
C. of D. with
- () 29. The day breaks, _____ the birds are singing.
A. for B. because
C. since D. as
- () 30. It was _____ that he had to ask for help.
A. a so big work
B. a so big job
C. such a big work
D. such a big job

二、根据汉语意思完成下列句子

1. 我们需要 4 打盒子。

We need _____.

2. 门口有两次敲门声。

There was _____ at the door.

3. 伦敦有1,000万人口。
London has a population of _____.
4. 火车出轨时,数百人受伤。
_____ were injured
when the train went off the rails.
5. 1月是一年的第一个月。
January is _____ of the year.
6. 起初他觉得英语很难学。
_____, he found it difficult to
learn English.
7. 大阪是日本的第二大城市。
Osaka is _____ city
in Japan.
8. 你需要再准备一双鞋子。
You will need _____
of shoes.
9. 我去过哈尔滨很多次了。
I have been to Harbin _____
times.
10. 孩子初次出门,母亲总要为之担心。
All mothers fear for their children when
they _____.
11. 他们都不同意贝拉的计划。

12. 我听说过他但不认识他。

13. 李明读完课文后继续做练习。

14. 他拒绝参加会议。

15. 你什么时候收到那封信的?

16. 带玛丽一道来参加派对。

17. 不要向我借钱。

18. 我相信他说的话是真的,但我不能信任他。

19. 他是世界上最快乐的人。(earth)

20. 你晚上什么时候休息?(bed)

三、选择括号中适当的词填空

1. He was so _____ that he fell _____
during the class. (asleep, sleepy, sleep)
2. I feel very _____ without my dog. (lone-
ly, alone)
3. Computers are becoming a part of our _____
life. (every day, everyday, daily)
4. Constable was a _____ English artist.
(huge, large, big, great)
5. It is _____ that he is alive. (sure, cer-
tain)
6. The kite is so _____ in the sky. (tall,
high)
7. _____ news never comes too late. (ill,
sick)
8. We wanted to get home before _____.
(black, dark)
9. He is famous _____ his many funny sto-
ries. (for, as)
10. I have never seen him _____. (ago,
before)
11. My brother is good at drawing. I am good
at it, _____. (too, either)
12. _____ no one believes her. (almost, near-
ly)
13. Let's have dinner together _____ next
week. (sometimes, sometime, some
time)
14. Come _____! I want to tell you some-
thing. (close, closely)
15. There is _____ anything in the fridge.
(hard, hardly)
16. He eats _____ food, so he is _____
fat. (too much, much too)

第21章 情景交际题

情景交际是中考单项选择的必考内容之一，一般为1~3个试题。涉及情景对话题型的有填写单词、短语或句子补充完整对话，从所给的选项中将对话补充完整等，所占比分的比重较大。所考查的内容为功能与意念话题，也就是中学生常见的话题。这类题型易得分也容易失分，因为这类题往往与我们的汉语思维、表达不一样，容易因粗心而犯错。



考点透视

考点1 常见的问候语及其应答

A: Hi! /Hello! 喂

Good morning/afternoon/evening. 早上/下午/晚上好。

How are you? 你好吗?

How are you doing? 你怎么样?

How's everything? 近况如何?

How was your weekend? 周末过得怎么样?

It's been a long time. /Long time no see.

好久不见了。

B: I'm OK. 我还可以。

Fine, thanks, and you? 很好，谢谢你。你呢?

Very well, thank you. 很好，谢谢!

Just so so. 马马虎虎。

Sure. 当然。

All right. 好的。

考点2 介绍时的常用句型

My name is Jim. 我的名字叫吉姆。

I'm a student. 我是名学生。

I'm from England. 我来自英国。

This is Mr. /Mrs. /Miss/Ms. Brown. 这是

布朗先生/夫人/小姐/女士。

May I introduce Professor Jeff Brown to you? 请允许我给大家介绍一下杰夫·布朗教授好吗?

考点3 表达告别的句型

A: Good-bye/Bye/Bye-bye. 再见。

Good night. 晚安。

See you later tomorrow. 以后/明天见。

I am sorry I have to go now. 很抱歉，我必须走了。

I'm afraid I must be leaving now. 恐怕我得走了。

I think it's time for us to leave now. 我想我们该走了。

B: Good-bye/Bye/Bye-bye. 再见。

Good night. 晚安。

See you later tomorrow. 以后/明天见。

Let's hope we'll meet again. 希望我们能再见。

Hope to see you again. 希望再见到你。

Do keep in touch! 经常联系。

I'll miss you. 我会想你的。

考点4 表达感谢的句型

A: Thank you (very much). (非常)感谢。

Thanks a lot. 多谢。

Thank you for your help. 谢谢你的帮助。

It's very kind/nice of you. 你真是太好了。

I appreciate your help. 我非常感谢你的帮助。

B: Not at all. 不用谢。不客气。

You're welcome. 不用谢。

That's OK/all right. 没关系。

It's a pleasure. 这是我的荣幸。

考点 5 表达道歉的句型

A: Sorry. /I'm sorry. 对不起。

Excuse me, please. 请原谅。

I beg your pardon. 我请求你的原谅。

I'm sorry for losing your book. 很抱歉丢了你的书。

I'm sorry to interrupt you. 很抱歉打扰你。

I'm sorry (that) I'm late. 对不起, 我迟到了。

My pleasure. 很荣幸。

I'm very glad you enjoyed it. 很高兴你喜欢它。

Sorry, I won't do it again. 对不起, 我不会再做这样的事了。

B: That's OK. 没关系。

It's all right. 没关系。

Never mind. 别放在心上。

It doesn't matter. 不要紧。

It's nothing. 没有什么。

Forget it. 忘记这件事吧。

考点 6 表达提供帮助的句型

A: Do you want me to clean the room? 你想让我打扫房间吗?

Can I help you? 我能帮助你吗?

Would you like me to help you? 你想让我帮助你吗?

What can I do for you? 我能为你做些什么?

Let me take your bags. 我来给你拿包吧。

Is there anything I can do for you? 我能为你做些什么?

B: Yes, please. 好的, 请做吧。

Yes, thanks. 好的, 谢谢。

Thank you. 谢谢你。

That would be nice/fine. 谢谢。那太好了。

Thank you for your (the) help. 谢谢你的帮助。

No, thanks/thank you. 不, 谢谢你。

Thank you all the same. 仍然谢谢你。

That's very kind of you, but I can manage it myself. 你真好, 但是我能自己应付。

考点 7 表达邀请的句型

A: Let's go for a walk. 让我们散步怎么样?

Would you like to go for a walk? 你愿意出去走走吗?

You must come to dinner with us. 你一定要来和我们一起吃晚饭。

May I invite you to dinner? 我能邀请你共进晚餐吗?

What/How about having a swim? 去游泳怎么样?

B: OK. 好的。

Good idea. 好主意。

Thank you. 谢谢你。

I'd like that, thanks. 非常愿意, 谢谢。

Yes, I'd love to. 我乐意去。

That would be very nice. 那太好了。

No, thank you. 不, 谢谢你。

It's very nice of you, but my mother is ill. 你真好, 但是我妈妈病了。

I'd love to, but I'm afraid I have no time. 我想去, 但恐怕没有时间。

I'm sorry I can't. What about another time? 很抱歉我不能去。下次怎么样?

考点 8 表达请求允许的句型

A: May I come in? 我可以进来吗?

Can/Could I use your telephone? 我可以用你的电话吗?

Is it all right if I sit here? 我能坐在这里吗?

I wonder if I could smoke here. 不知我能否在这儿吸烟。

Would/Do you mind if I open the window? 如果我开窗户你介意吗?

B: Yes, please. 可以, 请吧。

Sure/Certainly. 当然可以。

Please do. 请吧。

That's all right. 没问题。

Of course, you can. 当然可以, 请吧。

Go ahead, please. 做吧。/说吧。/走吧。

I'm sorry, it's not allowed. 抱歉, 那是不允许的。

考点 9 表达祝愿、祝贺的句型及其答语

A: Have a good day/time! 玩得高兴

Have a good journey/trip! 旅行愉快!

Good luck! 祝你好运

Enjoy yourself! 玩得开心!

Best wishes to you. 向你致以最美好的祝愿。

Happy New Year! 新年快乐!

Merry Christmas! 圣诞节快乐!

I'm afraid not. You'd better not. 恐怕不行。你最好不要。

I'm sorry. It's not allowed. 抱歉, 那不允许。

I'm sorry, but you can smoke in the next room. 对不起, 但你可以在隔壁房间吸烟。

Happy birthday! 生日快乐!

Wish you all the success! 祝你(们)成功!

Congratulations! 祝贺你!

Well done! 做得好!

B: Thank you. 谢谢你。

You, too. 你也是。

The same to you. 同样也祝愿你。

考点 10 表达约会的句型

A: Will you be free tomorrow? 明天你有空吗?

Do you have time this afternoon? 今天下午你有时间吗?

How about tomorrow morning? 明天早上怎么样?

When/Where shall we meet? 我们什么时候/什么地方见面?

Could we meet at 4:30? 我们可以在 4:30 见面吗?

Let's make it 4:30. 让我们定在 4:30 吧。

What time is convenient for you? 你什么时候方便?

B: Yes, I'll be free then. 好的, 我那时有空。

All right. See you then. 好的。到时候见。

I'm afraid not. I have no time then. 恐怕不行。我那时没有时间。

Sorry, I won't be free then. But I'll be free tomorrow. 对不起, 我那时没空。但是我明天有空。

考点 11 打电话时的常用句型

A: Hello! May I speak to Tom? 喂! 请让汤姆接电话好吗?

Hello! I'd like to speak to Mr. Green. 喂! 我想和格林先生通话。

Is that Liu Ying speaking? 你是刘英吗?

Can I leave a message? 我能留个条吗?

I'll call back later/again. 一会儿我将给你回电话。

I'll ring him/her up again. 我会再给他/她打电话。

B: Hello! This is Mary speaking. 喂! 我是玛丽。

Hello, who is that? 喂, 你是谁?

Hold on, please. 请稍等。

Hold the line, please. 请等一下。

Just a moment, please. 请稍等。

Sorry. He/She isn't here right now. 对不起。他/她现在不在此处。

Can I take a message? 我能捎个信吗?

The line is bad/busy. 电话占线。

I couldn't get through. 我接不通。

Sorry, I'm afraid you have the wrong number. 对不起, 恐怕你打错电话了。



考点 12 购物时的常用句型

A: Can/May I help you? 你买什么?

What can I do for you? 我能为你做什么?

How many/much would you like? 你想要多少?

What color/size/kind would you like? 你想要什么颜色/尺寸/种类的?

What about this one? 这个怎么样?

Here's your change. 给你找零。

B: I want/I'd like a pair of shoes. 我想要一双鞋子。

How much is it/are they? 它/它们多少钱?

May I try it on? 我可以试穿它吗?

It's too big/small. 太大/小了。

Sorry, it's too expensive. 对不起, 太贵了。

Do you have any other colors/sizes/kinds? 你有其他颜色/尺寸/种类的吗?

Two and a half kilos/pounds, please. 2.5 公斤/磅。

That's fine. I'll take it. 那好。我买它。

Just have a look. 只是看一看。

Well, I'll think about it. 好的。我会考虑它。

考点 13 就餐时的常用句型

A: Would you like something to eat/drink?

你想要些吃的/喝的东西吗?

What would you like (to have)? 你想要什么?

Would you like some more fish? 你还想再要些鱼吗?

Help yourself to some fish. 随便吃些鱼。

Which do you prefer, rice or noodles? 米饭和面条, 你喜欢哪一样?

What would you like to drink, tea or coffee? 茶和咖啡, 你喜欢喝哪一样?

Is there a table for two? 有双人桌吗?

B: Yes, I'd like a drink. 是的, 我想要杯饮料。

I'd like rice and chicken. 我想要米饭和鸡

肉。

Just a little, please. 请来一点吧。

Can I have some more soup? 我可以再要一些汤吗?

It's so delicious. Thank you. 味道真好。谢谢你。

I prefer noodles to rice. 比起米饭来, 我更喜欢面条。

I like green tea. 我喜欢绿茶。

No, thank you. I've had enough. 不, 谢谢你。我吃饱了。

I'm full, thank you. 我饱了, 谢谢你。

It's very delicious, but I can't eat any more. 很好吃, 但是我不能再吃了。

This way, please. 请这边走。

考点 14 就医时的常用句型

A: What's the matter? 怎么了?

Do you have a fever? 你发烧吗?

How long have you felt like this? 你感觉这样多长时间了?

It's nothing serious. 不严重。

Take this medicine three times a day. 吃这个药一天三次。

You'll be all right/well soon. 你很快就会好。

Give up smoking and keep on taking more

exercises. 戒烟并坚持多锻炼。

B: I have a headache/fever. 我头痛/发烧。

I feel terrible/awful. 我感觉很难受。

I don't feel well. 我觉得不舒服。

I've got a pain here. 我这儿疼。

I don't feel like eating anything. 我不想吃东西。

I can't sleep well. 我睡不好。

考点 15 问路时的常用句型

A: Excuse me. Where's the washroom?

请问洗手间在哪里?

Can you tell me how to get to the post office? 你能告诉我去邮局的路吗?

Excuse me. Which bus goes to World Park? 请问哪路汽车去世界公园?

Excuse me. Which is the way to the Bank of China? 请问哪一条是去中国银行的路?

Excuse me. Could you tell me the way to the station, please? 请问你可以告诉我去车站的路吗?

How can I get to No. 4 Middle School? 我怎么样能到四中?

B: It's over there. 在那里。

It's about 400 metres from here. 离这里大

考点 16 谈论天气的句型

A: What's the weather like today? 今天天气怎么样?

How's the weather in Beijing? 北京的天气怎么样?

What a cold/hot day today! 多么冷/热的一天!

考点 17 表达语言交际困难的句型

Pardon? 请再说一遍好吗?(读升调)

I beg your pardon? 请再说一遍好吗?

I don't understand. 我不明白。

Sorry, I can't follow you. 对不起, 我没听清楚。

Could you say that again, please? 请再说一遍好吗?

Could you repeat that, please? 请你重复一遍好吗?

Can you speak more slowly, please? 你能

考点 18 表达提醒注意的句型

Don't forget your raincoat. 别忘了你的雨衣。

Remember to lock the door. 记得锁上门。

Make sure that all the windows are closed. 确保所有的窗户都关上。

Mind your head/step! 小心头/楼梯!

考点 19 表达建议和劝告的句型

Let's go and have a look. 让我们去看一看。

Should we go now? 我们现在走好吗?

约 400 米。

Go down this street until you see the tall red building. 沿着这条街走, 直到你看见红色的高楼。

Turn right/left at the second corner. 在第二个路口向右/左拐。

You can't miss it. 你不会错过它。

You can take bus No. 103. 你可以乘 103 路公共汽车。

You'd better take a taxi. 你最好乘出租车。

Sorry, I don't know. I'm a stranger here. 对不起, 我不知道。我是新来的。

It's a nice/fine/beautiful day today. 今天是一个好天气。

B: It's sunny/cloudy/windy/rainy/snowy/foggy. 天气晴朗/多云/多风/多雨/有雪/有雾。

It's getting cool/cold/warm/hot. 天气正在变凉/冷/暖和/热。

说得再慢些吗?

What do you mean by saying that? 你说这话是什么意思?

I don't know how to say that in English. 我不知道怎样用英语说?

How do you spell it, please? 你怎么拼读它?

I'm sorry I only know a little English. 对不起, 我仅知道一点英语。

No smoking! 请勿吸烟!

No spitting! 请勿吐痰!

Wet floor! 小心地滑!

Look out! /Be careful! 当心!

Don't touch! 请勿触摸!

It's dangerous! 危险!

What/How about a picnic this Sunday? 这个周日去野餐怎么样?

Why don't you buy a computer? 你为什么



不买台电脑?

Why not go to a movie? 为什么不去看电影?

You'd better go to see the doctor. 你最好去看医生。

You should listen to and read English everyday. 你应该每天听和读英语。

If I were you, I'd phone him now. 如果我是你, 我就给他打电话。

Please stand in line. 请排队。

考点 20 表达同意与否的句型

Sure. /Certainly. /Of course. 当然可以。

No problem. 没问题。

That's correct. 正确。

All right. 好的。

I agree. 我赞同。

I disagree with you. 我不赞同你。

That's a good idea. 好主意。

Yes, I think so. 是的, 我认为是这样。

No way. 没门。

Of course not. 当然不是。

I don't agree. 我不同意。

I don't think so. 我认为不是那样。

I'm afraid not. 恐怕不是。

I'm for/against it. 我支持/反对它。

考点 21 表达喜欢与否的句型

This book is very interesting. 这本书非常有趣。

I like/love the movie very much. 我非常喜欢这部电影,

I like/love to play computer games. 我喜欢玩电脑游戏。

I like taking photos. 我喜欢照相。

I enjoy listening to music. 我喜欢听音乐。

I'm interested in science. 我对科学感兴趣。

He is fond of music. 他喜欢音乐。

This song is bad/awful. 这首歌很难听。

I don't like the movie very much. 我不是很喜欢这部电影。

I hate to do housework. 我讨厌做家务。

考点 22 表达肯定和不肯定的句型

I'm sure. 我肯定。

I'm sure of that. 我对此非常肯定。

I'm (quite) sure (that) she'll join us. 我(非常)肯定她会来。

There is no doubt that it's made of silk. 毫无疑问这是丝绸制成的。

It's clear that it will rain soon. 很明显天不久就会下雨。

I'm not so sure. 我不肯定。

I'm not sure of that. 对此我不确定。

I'm not sure whether/if she can come. 我不太确定她是否会来。

Maybe you're right. 也许你是对的。

Perhaps she is at home now. 也许她现在在家。

It's hard to say. 很难说。

考点 23 表达可能和不可能句型

A: He can/may come today. 他今天可能来。

It may snow tonight. 今晚可能下雪。

It's possible to finish the homework before 6 o'clock. 在六小时前完成家庭作业是可能的。

It's likely to rain this afternoon. 今天下午可能下雨。

It's likely that you will lose this game. 你可能会输掉这场比赛。

B: He may not come so early. 他可能来不这么早。

He can't be in the office now. 现在他不可能在办公室里。

It's not likely to snow soon. 不大可能下雪。

It's impossible to finish my homework within one hour. 在一个小时内完成我的家庭作业是不可能的。

考点 24 表达偏爱和爱好的句型

I prefer tea. 我喜欢茶。

I prefer tea to coffee. 我喜欢茶胜过咖啡。

I like English better / the best. 我更/最喜

欢英语

My favorite subject is physics. 我最喜欢的学科是物理。

考点 25 表达意愿和打算的句型

I'll go with you. 我打算和你去。

I'm going to see my head teacher this afternoon. 我打算今天下午去看我的班主任。

I'd like to make a phone call to her after class. 放学后我打算给她打个电话。

I want/hope to find an English pen-friend. 我希望找一位英语笔友。

I plan to go to Hangzhou this summer. 今

年夏天我计划去杭州。

We are ready to move to a new house. 我们打算搬到一个新房子。

I am thinking of driving to Beijing. 我正考虑开车去北京。

I don't want to live in the big city. 我不想住在大城市里。

考点 26 表达希望和愿望的句型

I wish to see you again. 我希望再次看到你。

I hope to become a doctor. 我希望成为一名医生。

I hope it stays fine. 我希望它能一直这么好。

I wish I were younger. 我希望我能年轻点。

I hope so. 我希望如此。

I hope not. 我不希望这样。

考点 27 表达赞扬和鼓励的句型

A: Very good! 非常好!

Well done! 干得好!

Wonderful! 好极了!

Excellent! 太好了!

You speak English very well. 你英语说的非常好。

Your dress is beautiful! 你的女服很漂亮!

Come on! 加油!

Keep trying! 继续努力!

You can do it! 你能行的!

B: Thank you. 谢谢你。

OK. I'll try it again. 好的, 我再试试。

考点 28 表达责备和抱怨的句型

Don't be late again. 别再迟到了。

He's to blame. 他应该受到责备。

What do you mean by doing so? 你这么做是什么意思?

How could you cheat your teacher? 你怎么能欺骗老师?

He shouldn't have done it. 他本不该做这事。

Why didn't you tell me the truth? 你为什么不告诉我实情?

Why don't you do something about it? 你为什么不对此做点什么?

考点 29 表达冷淡之意的句型

I don't care. 我不在乎。

I don't care what you do. 我不在乎你做什么。

It doesn't matter to me. 与我无关。

I don't mind if you smoke. 我不在乎你是否吸烟。

It's none of my business. 这不关我的事情。

考点 30 表达高兴和满意的句型

How wonderful/nice! 妙极了! /好极了!

That's lovely/great/wonderful! 真可爱! /真了不起! /真是妙极了!

I'm so happy. 我真高兴。

It's well done. 干得好。

I'm pleased to know that. 知道这件事我很



高兴。

Good! 好!

Well done! 干得好。

Perfect! 太好了!

That's fine. 很好。

That's better. 那更好!

That's good enough. 够好的了。

I'm pleased with your spoken English. 我对你的口语很满意。

考点 31 表达惊奇的句型

Really? 真的?

Oh dear! 天呀!

Is that so? 真是这样?

What a surprise! 太让人吃惊了!

How nice to see you! 看到你真好!

How surprising! 太奇怪了!

I'm surprised. 我感到很吃惊。

It surprises me that your English is so beautiful. 你的英语这么好真是让我吃惊。

Does that surprise you? 你觉得吃惊吗?

Is this what you expected? 这就是你期待的?

考点 32 表达忧虑的句型

What's wrong? 怎么了?

What's the matter? 怎么了?

Anything wrong? 有什么不对的?

What should we do? 我们应该干什么?

Is something worrying you? 什么事让你这么烦?

Are you worried about your health? 你担心自己的健康吗?

考点 33 表达安慰的句型

There, there. 好了, 好了。

Don't be afraid. 别害怕。

Don't worry. 别担心。

It's (quite) all right. 没事的。

It'll be OK/all right. 会好的/没事的。

Take it easy. 慢慢来, 别紧张。

考点 34 表达遗憾或同情的句型

I'm so sorry! 真对不起!

It's a great pity! 太可惜了!

What a shame! 真可惜!

That's too bad! 太糟了!

I wish I had never given it up. 我希望自己从未放弃过。

If I had been there, he would not have made such a serious mistake. 如果我在那儿, 他不会犯这么严重的错误。

I'm so sorry about your illness. 你的病让我很难过。

I'm sorry to hear you are going away. 听说你要走我很难过。

Please accept my deep sympathy. 请接受我深深的同情。

What a pity! 真遗憾!

I'm sorry to hear that. 听到那件事我很难过。

考点 35 表达时刻、时段、日期的句型

A: Excuse me. What's the time, please? / What time is it? 请问几点了?

Have you got the time? 请问几点了?

When did you come to China? 你什么时候来的中国?

What time do you get up every day? 你每天几点起床?

How soon you will be back? 你多久回来?

How long have you been in this school? 你在这个学校多长时间了?

How long does it take you to get to school? 到学校花费你多长时间?

When did you live in Beijing? 你什么时候住在北京的?

How long have you been ill? 你生病多长时间了?

What's the date today? 今天是几号?

B: It's half past five/twenty to nine. 5 点半/8 点 40。

I came to China in 1998. 我在 1998 年来的

中国。

I get up at 6 o'clock. 我 6 点起床。

I will be back in three days. 我 3 天后回来。

I have been in this school for three years. 我在这个学校 3 年了。

It takes me twenty minutes by bike. 骑自

行车花费我 20 分钟。

I lived in Beijing from 1996 to 1999. 我从 1996 年到 1999 年住在北京。

I have been ill since last Monday night. 自从上个星期一的晚上我就生病了。

It's July 1st. 是 7 月 1 日。

考点 36 表达频度的句型

A: How often do you go to movies? 你多久去看一次电影?

B: I go to the movie once a week. 我一周

去看一次电影。

I often go to movies. 我经常去看电影。

考点 37 表达位置的句型

A: Where is the picture? 图画在哪里?

B: It's on/at/above/in/under/beside/near/behind the table. 在桌子上/在桌子旁/在桌子上方/在桌子里面/在桌子下面/在桌子旁

边/在桌子附近/在桌子后边。

He sits at the back of the room. 他坐在房间的后面。

考点 38 表达方向的句型

A: Which is the way to the station? 去车站的路是哪一条?

Where is the train/bus going? 这班火车/公共汽车去哪里?

Where are you going? 你要去哪里?

Are you going up/down? 你是往上/往下走?

B: The train is going to Xi'an. 这班火车

去西安。

The train is going to the east/west/south/north. 这班火车去东部/西部/南部/北部。

I'm going to the railway station. 我去火车站。

I'm leaving for Shanghai. 我要去上海。

考点 39 表达距离的句型

A: How far is your school from here? 你们学校离这里多远?

B: It's about 40 minutes by bike. 骑自行车

车大约 40 分钟。

It's about 6 kilometres/miles away. 大约 6 千米/英里远。

考点 40 表达存在的句型

A: Is there a bird in the tree? 树上有一只鸟吗?

Are there any apples in the tree? 在苹果树上有苹果吗?

What's on the tree? 树上有什么?

There're apples on the tree. 树上有苹果。

B: Yes, there is/are. 是的, 有。

No, there isn't/aren't (any). 不, 没有。

考点 41 表达形状的句型

A: What does it look like? 它看上去什么样?

What's the shape of the clouds? 云是什么形状的?

B: It looks like a camel. 看上去像是一只骆驼。

It's round/long/tall/short. 它是圆的/长的/高的/矮的。

It's a circle/square. 它是圆的/方的。

It's a U-shaped road. 这是条 U 形路。

考点 42 表达颜色的句型

What color is the bag? 这个包是什么颜色的?

It's green/red/blue/yellow/black/white/
orange/purple.

它是绿的/红色的/蓝色的/黄色的/黑色的
/白色的/橙色的/紫色的。

考点 43 表达材料的句型

A: What's the table made of? 这桌子是什
么制成的?

What's the red wine made from? 这红酒是

什么制成的?

B: It's made of wood. 它是木头制成的。

It's made from grapes. 它是葡萄制成的。

考点 44 表达价格的句型

A: How much is the dictionary? 这本字典
多少钱?

How much is it? 它多少钱?

How much are they? 它们多少钱?

Is it cheap or expensive? 它是便宜还是贵?

B: The dictionary costs me 100 yuan. 这
本字典花费了我 100 元。

考点 45 表达规格的句型

A: What size is your sweater? 你的毛衣是
多大号的?

What size shoes do you wear? 你穿多大号
的鞋子?

B: The size of my sweater is XXL. 我的
毛衣是 XXL 号的。

It's too big/small/long/short for me. 它太
大/小/长/短。

考点 46 表达年龄的句型

A: How old are you? 你多大了?

How old is he/she? 他/她多大了?

B: I'm eighteen. 我 18 岁了。

He/She is six years old. 他/她 6 岁了。

考点 47 表达长度、宽度、高度的句型

A: How long is the bridge? 这座桥多长?

B: It's 430 meters/feet long. 它 430 米/
英尺长。

A: How wide is the river? 这条河多宽?

B: It's about 200 meters wide. 大约 200
米宽。

A: How tall/high is the building? 这座楼
多高?

B: It's 130 meters tall/high. 它 130 米高。
The building has 85 floors/stories. 这幢楼
有 85 层高。

考点 48 表达数量的句型

A: How many students are there in your
class? 在你们班里有多少个学生?

How much water do you drink every day?
你每天喝多少水?

B: There are forty students in our class.
在我们班里有 40 个学生。

I drink five glasses of water every day. 我
每天喝五杯水。

考点 49 表达原因和结果的句型

A: Why are you late for school? 你为什么
上学迟到了?

How could you miss the train/plane? 你为
什么错过了火车/飞机?

B: Because I got up late this morning. 因
为今天早上我起床晚了。

As he was ill, he couldn't come to school.

因为他生病了, 他不能来上学。

Since she did not feel well, she stayed at
home. 因为他觉得不舒服, 她待在家里。

Because of the bad traffic, we missed the
train. 因为堵车, 我们误了火车。

It is so dark that I can not see anything in
the room. 天太黑, 我看不见屋里的东西。

考点 50 表达工作及工作单位的句型

What do you do? 你做什么工作?

What are you going to be? 你打算将来干什么?

I'm a teacher/doctor/worker/farmer/businessman/manager. 我是一位老师/医生/工人/农民/商人/经理。

I'm going to be a scientist/computer engineer. 我打算成为一名科学家/计算机工程师。

A: Where do you work? 你在哪里工作?

What company are you working for? 你在什么公司工作?

B: I'm teaching English in a high school. 我在一所高中教英语。

I'm working for a computer company. 我为一家电脑公司工作。

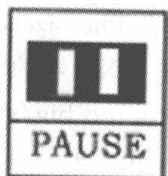


真题再现

- () 1. (烟台) Which of the following signs can be seen on the door of a shopping mall?



A



B



C



D

【解析】C。根据常识可知，在商店的入口处，应该有一个显示“推”的牌子，故答案选C。

- () 2. (金华) —Thank you for your help.

- A. That's all right
B. No, thanks
C. That's right
D. Of course

【解析】A。对别人的感谢，一般用“That's all right”“不客气”来回答。

- () 3. (金华) —Will you please take a message for the headteacher?

- A. It doesn't matter
B. Sure. I'll be glad to
C. Yes, I'll take

D. I can help you

【解析】B。问句的意思是：你能不能给校长捎个口信儿？答句的意思是：当然，我很乐意。

- () 4. (金华) —Maths is as interesting as English, I think.

—
English is more interesting than maths.

- A. I think so
B. I don't think so
C. I hope so
D. I don't hope so

【解析】B。根据答句中的“英语比数学有趣多了”可知并不认同，故答案选B。

- () 5. (温州) —I'm going to Hainan on vacation next week.

- A. Have a good time
B. Not at all
C. Thank you
D. I have no idea

【解析】A。have a good time 是指“玩得开心，玩得愉快”。

- () 6. (福州) —Excuse me, where can I park my car?

—Drive ahead, and you will see the sign _____ on your right.



A



B



C

【解析】C。根据常识可知 C 选项是“Parking”的意思。

() 7. (泰安) —Happy birthday to you, Mary!

- A. Thanks a lot
B. The same to you
C. You're welcome
D. It's kind of you

【解析】A。根据常识可知答案选 A。

() 8. (杭州) —Big animals can be a lot of

trouble. Maybe you should get a small pet, like a goldfish.

- A. That's all right
B. That's a good idea
C. You're welcome
D. Never mind

【解析】B。根据句意可知：大型动物会带来很多的麻烦，或许你可以养一些小的宠物，比方说金鱼。那么答句按常识可知是“这是个好主意”。故答案选 B。

实战模拟

() 1. —How are you doing, Daisy?
—
, thank you.

- A. I'm OK B. I'm a teacher
C. I'd love to D. I'm coming

() 2. —Nice to meet you, Mike. —
—Everything is OK. Thanks.

- A. What are you doing
B. Where have you been
C. How is it going
D. What's wrong with you

() 3. Mum,
is Mr. Smith. Mr. Smith,
is my mother.

- A. this; this B. this; that
C. that; this D. that; that

() 4. —Thank you for your coffee and tasty snacks. I'm afraid I have to go now.

—OK.
.

- A. Go slowly B. All right
C. Sounds great D. See you

() 5. —John, it's 10 p. m. It's time to go to bed now.

—OK,
, Mum!

- A. good morning
B. good afternoon
C. good evening
D. good night

() 6. —Peter, don't step on the grass.

—
.

A. It doesn't matter

B. I can't do it

C. Don't worry

D. Sorry, I won't do it again

() 7. —I'm sorry I've broken the alarm clock.

—
. I'll have it repaired in a moment.

- A. Excuse me B. Never mind
C. What a pity D. No problem

() 8. —I'm sorry I can't help you.

—
.

- A. Not at all
B. It doesn't matter
C. Thank you all the same
D. I'm sorry to hear that

() 9. —Would you like something to drink?

—
I'm not thirsty.

- A. Yes, please.
B. No, thanks.
C. OK.
D. Some water, please.

() 10. —Let's go out for a pic nic on Sunday.

—
.

- A. Nice to meet you
B. Here you are
C. The same to you
D. Good idea

() 11. —Would you mind looking after my dog while I'm on holiday?

- _____.
- A. Of course not
B. Yes. I'd be happy to
C. Not at all. I've no time
D. Yes, please
- () 12. —We are going to visit Huaguo Mountain this weekend.
—Really? _____!
A. Congratulations
B. That's all right
C. Have a good time
D. Thanks a lot
- () 13. —I won the first prize in 2009 YWTV Cup English Competition.
—_____.
A. Good luck
B. Thank you
C. Congratulations
D. Sorry to hear that
- () 14. —Will you be free this Saturday afternoon?
—_____. I'll have to take part in the writing competition.
A. I'm not afraid
B. I'm afraid not
C. I'm afraid so
D. I'm not afraid so
- () 15. —Who's that speaking?
—_____.
A. This is Jack speaking
B. I am speaking
C. Jack is me
D. I am Jack
- () 16. —What can I do for you?
—_____.
A. Yes, you can give a skirt to me
B. I'd like a skirt
C. No, I can do it myself
D. I can do what I want
- () 17. —Is there a table for 4, please?
—_____, please. Is the one near the back door OK?
A. Take your time
B. This way
C. You are welcome
D. After you
- () 18. —I have a headache and a cough.
—_____ have you been like this?
A. How soon
B. How long
C. How often
- () 19. —Excuse me!
—_____.
—How can I get to the nearest post office?
A. Yes? B. That's OK.
C. What's wrong? D. Pardon?
- () 20. —_____ today?
—It's fine.
A. How are you
B. What's the weather like
C. Who is on duty
D. What can I do for you
- () 21. —Could you turn down your radio, please? It's too noisy.
—_____.
—I asked you to turn down your radio a little.
A. I beg your pardon?
B. I'm sorry.
C. Do you want a go?
D. Yes, of course.
- () 22. —May I put my car here?
—Sorry, you mustn't. Look at the sign, it says "_____".
A. NO PHOTOS
B. NO PARKING
C. DANGEROUS
D. NO RIGHT TURN
- () 23. —I'm not sure what to do this evening. Any ideas?
—_____.
—Good idea.
A. How about going to the cinema?
B. I agree.
C. You never go shopping.

- D. You mustn't go to the park.
- () 24. —Shall we go to play football?
—_____. Let's go!
A. Sounds boring
B. That's a good idea
C. I'm afraid not
D. Thank you
- () 25. —Teachers should be spoken to politely.
—_____. It's important for us students.
A. That's right
B. I don't think so
C. It doesn't matter
D. That's OK
- () 26. —I think teenagers should be allowed to have part-time jobs.
—_____. Studying is more important for them.
A. I think so
B. I disagree with you
C. Me, too
D. No problem
- () 27. —What do you think of the movie?
—_____. It's very interesting.
A. I like it very much
B. I don't mind it
C. I can't stand it
D. I don't like it
- () 28. —Do you think it'll rain tomorrow?
—_____, because I don't listen to the weather report.
A. I'm sure B. I'm not sure
C. Yes, it will D. I think so
- () 29. —Whose notebook is this?
—It _____ Jane's. It has her name on it.
A. must be
B. might belong to
C. may be
D. could be
- () 30. —Which do you prefer, tea or juice?
—_____. Tea is my favorite

- drink.
- A. Tea, please B. Juice, please
C. Neither D. I don't know
- () 31. —I'm too nervous to give a talk before so many people.
—_____, Maria. You can do it.
A. That's true B. With pleasure
C. Come on D. You're right
- () 32. —What do you think of talk shows?
—_____. They're too boring.
A. I love them
B. Pretty good
C. I don't mind them
D. I can't stand them
- () 33. —Mum, I won first in the last exam.
—_____.
A. Well done B. Bad luck
C. Good luck D. It's nothing
- () 34. —Look, _____ dirty the water is!
—Yes, we should really take some actions to deal with it.
A. what a B. what
C. how D. how a
- () 35. —Oh, I have lost my CD!
—_____. Let's call the lost-and-found first.
A. Don't shout B. Take it easy
C. Forget it D. No chance
- () 36. —Mike hurt his leg while playing football yesterday.
—_____.
A. That's nothing
B. That's all right
C. Never mind
D. I'm sorry to hear that
- () 37. —_____ will the supper be ready?
I'm very hungry.
—In a minute.
A. How soon B. How long
C. How much D. How often
- () 38. _____ do you spend on your homework every day?
A. How often B. How long

- C. How many D. How much
- () 39. —What's the date today?
—_____.
- A. It's June 17th
B. It's Saturday
C. It's twenty to three
D. It's fine
- () 40. —_____ is your bag?
—It's on the chair.
- A. How B. What
C. Where D. Which
- () 41. —Where is the nearest hospital?
—_____.
- A. Yes, there is
B. Go down the street and turn left at the second crossing
C. It's about ten minutes' walk
D. You can take a bus
- () 42. —_____ is it from here to the cinema?
—It's about fifteen minutes on foot.
- A. How long
B. How soon
C. How far
- () 43. —_____?
—Only £5. It is very cheap.
- A. What time is it
B. How many do you want
C. How much is it

- D. What's wrong
- () 44. —_____ shoes do you wear?
—Size 43.
- A. How much B. How many
C. How big D. What size
- () 45. —_____?
—He is eighty years old.
- A. Where is your grandpa
B. How is your grandpa
C. How old is your grandpa
D. When was your grandpa born
- () 46. —_____ milk do you want?
—Two bags.
- A. How many B. How much
C. What D. How
- () 47. —Paul invited us to take part in a party tomorrow evening.
—_____ Is tomorrow his birthday?
- A. Why not?
B. What a good idea!
C. What for?
D. That's all right.
- () 48. —_____?
—I'm a policeman.
- A. What do you do
B. What do you want to do
C. What are you doing

答案与解析

第1章 名词

- 一、1. C drive 在此是名词, 根据“两小时的车程”判断, 两小时应用所有格形式, 复数名词形式表达所有格先变复数再加“'”, 故选 C。
2. A a few 修饰可数名词, little 修饰不可数名词, apple 是可数名词, coffee 是不可数名词, 故选 A。
3. A A 项相当于一个形容词, 可以位于名词前作定语; B 项不能作定语, 而且应该用复数形式; C 项是名词所有格, 可以位于名词前作定语, 但应该用名词复数的所有格; D 项数词和名词用连字符连接后不能用复数形式。
4. A 根据 red, yellow, pink 可以看出上文说的是颜色, 故选 A。
5. B pollution 为不可数名词, 因此要用单数, 又因有时间状语 now, 故选 B。
6. A policeman 的复数形式是 policemen。第二个空后面有形容词 terrible, 所以用 how 引起感叹句。
7. C 由 mothers 可知此处应是他们各自的妈妈, 故须在两个名字后都用 's。
8. C brain 意为“头脑, 思维”。
9. B mathematics 形似复数, 但实际上为单数, 所以排除 A 和 C。此处须用一般现在时陈述客观事实, 故选 B。
10. B editor-in-chief 为复合名词, 变为复数时应该把主体名词 editor 变为复数, 第二空应为所有格形式, 须在复合名词后加 's。
- 二、1. development 2. libraries
3. a piece of 4. paper bags
5. knives 6. Tom; Mary's
7. movies 8. actor
9. Japanese 10. children's
- 三、1. 去掉 a 2. age 改为 ages
3. sister 改为 sister's 4. tooth 改为 teeth
5. tomatos 改为 tomatoes

第2章 冠词

- 一、1. /; a 节假日前不用冠词, 第二空表示“一”, 用不定冠词。

2. The; the; / 第一空用 the 是因为在河流名称的前面要用定冠词; 第二空用 the 是因为在形容词最高级前面要用定冠词; 第三空用零冠词是因为国家名词前一般不加冠词。
3. The; / “the + 姓氏的复数”表示一家人或夫妻二人; 街道名称前不加冠词。
4. a a second time 意为“再一次, 另一次”。the second time 意为“第二次”。此句填 a 是表示动作的重复。
5. the; the 普通名词构成的专有名词前应加 the。
6. the; the 第一空填 the 是特指美国的首都; 第二空填 the 是在由普通名词构成的专有名词前应加定冠词。
7. the; / 表示在某一年的季节名称前应加定冠词。
8. The; / 第一空是特指, 第二空月份名词前不加冠词。
9. The; a; /; / 在表示运动的球类名称前不加冠词; 泛指三餐名称前不加冠词。
10. /; /; /; / 题意: 农民养羊是为了产毛和肉吗? 前两空也可填定冠词, 则题意为: 那些农民养的那些羊是为了产毛和肉吗?
11. /; the watch TV 看电视; “早、午、晚”名词前加定冠词。
12. /; / 指示代词不能与定冠词连用; 称谓前也不用冠词。
13. / 注意 news 是不可数名词, 且此处非特指, 故不用冠词。
14. a 三餐名称前若有形容词, 则可在形容词前加冠词, 此处是泛指, 故用 a。
15. The; the 第一空填 the 表示太阳是世界上独一无二的物体; 第二空填 the 是因为在方位名词前一般用定冠词。
- 二、1. D 第一空方位名词前用 the; 第二空名词前已有限定词 next 修饰, 不用冠词。
2. C in 加表颜色的名词, 表示穿着某颜色的衣服。注意颜色名词前不用冠词。
3. C engineer 为元音音素开头, 用 an; uniform 为辅音音素开头, 用 a。
4. A 注意最后一空 honest 是形容词作表语, 后无名词, 不要错填 an。
5. D 第一空普通名词构成的专有名词前加 the; 第二空街道名称前不加冠词。

6. B 独一无二的事物前用 the。at night 是习惯用法。
 7. D go to bed 是习惯用法。cup 是辅音音素开头，又是泛指，故用不定冠词 a。
 8. A hit sb. on the nose 是习惯用法，注意不用物主代词。
 9. D a bike 泛指自行车。by 后面的交通工具前不用冠词。
 10. B in the front of 表示在范围 (bus) 内，不加冠词表范围外。
 11. A 用定冠词表示特指。
 12. B the 加姓氏的复数表一家人。at table 表示就餐，不加冠词。
 13. A the streets 那些街道，表示特指。snow 为不可数名词，不加冠词。
 14. A 第一空表示特指，故用定冠词 the。watch TV news 看电视新闻，是固定用法。
 15. A Arab 是元音音素开头，且表泛指，故用不定冠词 an；English 语言名词前不用冠词；with a smile 是习惯用法。
- 三、1. in hospital; the hospital
2. a red; in front of
3. The Smiths
4. a success; a teacher; a failure
5. the bed; a

第 3 章 动词与动词词组

- 一、1. B 句意：老师告诉男孩们不要在街上玩耍。tell sb. (not) to do sth. 表示“告诉某人(不要)做某事”。行为动词 tell 后用动词不定式作宾语。
2. A 根据时间状语 for 2 years 可知要用持续性动词，选项中只有 have (有) 为持续性动词，故选 A。
3. D 根据句意“Alex 仅仅 4 岁的时候就很有下棋”可知应用 can 的过去式，表示能力。might 为 may 的过去式，表示允许或很小的可能性；should 表示义务、推测等；would 为 will 的过去式，表示意愿或用于第二人称表示请求的疑问句。
4. B put on “穿上”；put off “推迟”；get on “上车”；get up “起床”。根据句意“由于天气不好，他们不得不推迟比赛”，故选 B。
5. C 根据 I shall put my jacket on 可知天气变冷了，只有 get 有“变得”的意思，故选 C。
6. C 根据“He has gone to Canada”可知 James 去了加拿大，所以肯定不是 James 在办公室里说话。此处应为“肯定不”，表示极有把握的推测。may 表示猜测，但可能性很小；need 表示必要；must 表示极有把握的推测，用于肯定句中；can 也表示极有把握的推测，

但用于否定句中，故选 C。

7. D have been to 意为“去过某地”；have gone to 意为“去某地了”；have been in 意为“待在某地”。根据时间状语 for a month 和“就近原则”可判断选 D。
8. D explain 意为“解释”；express 意为“表达”；connect 意为“连接”；share 意为“共同拥有”。根据句意“我们和台湾有同样的历史和文化”可知选 D。
9. D pass 是动词，past 是介词，由 walked 可知第一空应该用 past。see sb. do sth. 意为“看见某人做了某事”；see sb. doing sth. 意为“看见某人正在做某事”，根据题意应该是“她看见有人在河里游泳”，故选 D。
10. C 从句当中的主语是动作的承受者，故用被动语态，被动语态的结构为“助动词 be + 过去分词”。if 引导的条件状语从句，用一般现在时表示将来，故选 C。
11. C 根据“in his father's beautiful car”判断，John 应该是被送到学校，从 usually 判断用一般现在时，故用一般现在时的被动语态。
12. D 用 may 提问，否定回答为“No, you mustn't. / No, you can't.”而“No, you mustn't.”表示“禁止”，语气较强，所以一般用“No, you can't.”be supposed to 表示“应该”，not... until 意为“直到……才”，故选 D。

- 二、1. help crying 2. had left/gone
3. makes; protecting 4. should be allowed
5. is made from 6. Let's; to help; with
7. has been dead 8. would go to
9. gave up 10. is said

第 4 章 形容词与副词

- 一、1. D 根据句意，只有汤姆的年龄是他妹妹的两倍才符合题意。故选 D。
2. D 使役动词 make 后可接动词原形（不带 to 的不定式）或过去分词作宾语补足语，但不能接现在分词，故可排除选项 A 和 B；而且 well 作形容词指“身体好”，否则为副词，根据句意和 feel 后接形容词可知选 D。
3. B 关键词 weather 是名词，故感叹句开头不用 how，排除 C、D；第二空根据句意“天气会变得更糟”，故用比较级。
4. D 根据关键词 favourite，可知我最喜欢刘德华，故用最高级。
5. C 根据句意“没有准备好演讲”可知他演讲时会紧张，故用 nervous。
6. B 第一空用 it 作形式宾语，其后不定式是真正宾语。
7. D be proud of 是固定用法，表示“为……



骄傲”。

8. C 根据句意“赢了比赛”，可知鲍勃是跳得最远的，故用最高级，排除 A、B。of 表示范围，和主语是同类，而 in 表示不同类，故选 C。
9. A 根据句意“至少够四个人吃”可知我们的食物“足够”，排除否定答案 B 和 D。food 不可数，故又排除 C。
10. B 考查“the+比较级...，the+比较级...”结构。句意为：“我们帮助的人越多，我们就会觉得越快乐。”
11. C 此题 sound 作系动词，故其后用形容词，排除 B、D；音乐听起来是优美的，故排除 A。
12. A 此题考查“can't be too + 形容词”结构，其意为“无论……也不为过”。
13. B 表示价格高低用 high/low，根据句意应是更便宜的，故用 lower。
14. C 根据常识可知，天津人口少于上海，而人口少用 small，故用比较级 smaller。
15. B 根据句意，妈妈说这种 MP3 有点贵，故选便宜些的。
16. A likely 是形容词，意为“可能的”，在句中作表语。easily 和 nearly 是副词，lonely（寂寞的）虽然是形容词，但其意义与句意不符。
17. A 由答语“No, it's worse.”可知问句中用 better。
18. B better 后面省略了 than he did，意为“我今年还没看到比他跑得更好成绩的人”。
19. C “keep+宾语+形容词”意为“使……保持……状态”。tidy 为形容词，意为“整洁的”，故选 C。
20. B 题意为：“这面包真好吃！”“加黄油味道会更好。”句中含有加黄油的面包与现在的面包相比的意思，故用 good（好吃的）的比较级 better。
21. D 根据题意可知，买车之后旅游更方便，而且修饰动词用副词，所以用 easily 的比较级 more easily。
22. B 本句中“who stayed here earlier”是定语从句，修饰 other group，表示“原来在这组的那一组”。
23. A if not better than 表示“如果不比……好的话”。if 引导条件状语从句时，某些成分可以省略。
24. C 根据所提供的情景“and the rewards are higher too”可判断出要用比较级表示“人们在一起工作时工作会更容易完成”。easily 是副词，修饰动词。easier 是形容词，修饰名词或作表语。
25. C 比较级还可以用 a bit, a little, a lot,

even, far, much 等修饰。语序为修饰词+比较级。

26. C 根据句意“你站得离电视机太近了”可知后半句句意应为“你可以离远一点吗？”，表示“远一点”的选项只有 C。
27. B than 前用比较级，quickly 的比较级为 more quickly，而且修饰动词用副词。
28. D A、C 项是语法错误，as ... as 之间不能用比较级形式。B 项也是语法错误，than 前要用比较级，把 than 变成 as 就对了。实际上 not as ... as = not more than。
29. C A 项是语法错误，as ... as 之间用原级。few 修饰可数名词，而 grain 是不可数名词。
30. A 本题考查副词辨析。skillfully 意为“巧妙地；技术好地”；commonly 意为“一般；普通；通常”；willingly 意为“自动地；欣然地”；nervously 意为“焦急地；紧张地”。句意为：“嗨，马克，音乐晚会怎么样？”“非常好，露西和安迪表演娴熟并获得第一名。”

二、A. 1. C strange something 改为 something strange。形容词作后置定语修饰名词。

2. D badly 改为 bad。weather 为名词，用形容词修饰，而 badly 为副词。
3. D stronger 改为 strongest。表示三者或三者以上的比较用最高级。
4. C cold 改为 colder。比较级 + and + 比较级，表示“越来越……”。
5. C for 改为 to。“be + 形容词 + 不定式”表示“做某事……”。

B. 1. 去掉 more。题意为：“我能在海上耐心地等待很长时间。”本句没有提供比过去/现在或其他人“更耐心”的依据，故此处 more 纯属多余。

2. well 前加 as。题意为：“在我的同学面前，好像我总是难以把事情干得和他们一样地好。”as well as 表示同级的比较，意为“和……一样好”。
3. 去掉 more。因为 longer 本身已是比较级，不能再用 more 修饰。
4. more nicely 改为 nicer。该句中 tastes 为系动词，其后应用形容词比较级。
5. deeply 改为 deep。题意为：“他潜入水中的深处。”deep 一词表示潜入水中的具体的、一定的深度（此类副词尤其常见于介词短语前）。

三、1. really friendly; angry with

2. too tired to; farther

3. housing prices; high; save up

4. busy surfing on

5. difficult for; work out

6. The harder; the more
7. silly of you to
8. new green silk
9. not frightened; frightening words
10. any other subject

第5章 代词

- 一、1. one 2. anyone 3. herself 4. a little
5. You, he and I 6. whose 7. much
8. each 9. whom 10. anything; something
- 二、1. A 根据答语“张怡宁”可知是提问某人，故用疑问代词 who。
2. C 由句中的 two hats 可排除 all 和 none，它们都表示多者中的数量；由 looks 的第三人称单数形式决定本题选 C。因为 neither 作主语时谓语动词用第三人称单数形式，而 both 用复数形式；Do you have another one? 也说明了两顶帽子都不合适。
3. C 由“Peter is a reporter”可知“The tape recorder”是他的，his = his tape recorder，故选 C。
4. B 空格处代替上文的 Alice 且位于动词后面作宾语，所以应该用人称代词的宾格，而不能用物主代词，不能选 A 和 D；下文中的主语由于不是“她”，因此不能用反身代词，故选 B。
5. D 因为 the man 就是动作的执行者，且是人，关系代词在定语从句中作主语，故选 D。
6. C help yourself to ... “请随便享用……”，根据句意“孩子，请随便吃些鱼”可知选 C。
7. D 根据句意可知需填物主代词。名词性物主代词 = 形容词性物主代词 + 名词，第一个空后没有名词，应该用名词性物主代词 yours，第二空后有名词，应该用形容词性物主代词 my，故选 D。
8. A 先行词 days 在定语从句中作 spent 的宾语，所以用关系代词 that 引导。当表示时间的先行词在定语从句中作时间状语时，才用 when；who 引导先行词为人的定语从句，故选 A。
9. D of 为介词，后面跟宾语，所以 A、B、C 项都不正确。
10. B 根据答语“我不确定，可能是记者”可知问句是询问职业，故从句应该由疑问代词 what 引导，故选 B。
11. D 指示代词中 that 指代名词单数或不可数名词；those 指代可数名词的复数，此题中 those 指代 things，故选 D。
12. B 根据答语可知问的是事情，故排除 C 和

D。在一般情况下 something 用在肯定句中，anything 用于否定句和疑问句中，故选 B。

13. A another 指不定数目或很多数目中的另一个；each other 意思是“相互，彼此”；the other 指的是两个或两部分中的另一个（部分），修饰单数名词或复数名词；others 意思是“其他的人或物”，后面不能再跟名词。根据句意“我们有五种书包。你喜欢这个吗？不，你能再给我看另一种吗？”故选 A。

14. A she 不可以作引导词，所以排除。此处先行词指人，并在句中作宾语，故用 whom 引导。which 指物。

15. B 根据题意可知看天空应该表示的是远处。本题谓语动词是 is，故用 that。

- 三、1. and; both 2. Can you; any
3. no friends 4. Which man is
5. Neither; wants

第6章 介词

- 一、1. D half past eight 表示“八点半”。
2. A on the tree 表示长在树上的；in the tree 表示在树上，但不是长在树上的。
3. C worry about 担心；help sb. with sth. 帮助某人做某事。
4. C 固定用法，相当于“What time is it by one's watch?”问几点了。
5. C be interested in 是固定搭配，意为“对……感兴趣”。
6. A walk along = walk down, 表示“沿着……走”。
7. A move around 绕着……转。
8. A as 在此处意思是“作为”，句意是“我两个月后就是医生了”。
9. A 本题的意思是“他父亲在一天的工作后很累，以致于很早就睡觉了”。
10. D be surprised at sth. 对某事感到惊讶。
11. A 根据句意“芳芳的父亲大约四十岁”，故选 A。
12. A on one's way to 表示“在去……的路上”，注意 home 是副词，前面不用介词 to。
13. A 在晚上用 in the evening，但在具体某一天的晚上用 on。
14. D be used for 表示“被用来做……”，between 表示两者之间。
15. B 注意：on the map, on the paper, in the newspaper, in the book 这些短语中用不同的介词。
- 二、1. with; about 2. on 3. to; for
4. in 5. after 6. in



7. off 8. on 9. on; by
10. on 11. with 12. for; for
13. with 14. of 15. over

第7章 时态与语态

- 一、1. C 题意为“教室里的学生被要求放学后拖地板”。根据主语和谓语之间存在被动关系，可知答案为C项。
2. A old people 是动词短语 speak to 的承受者，因此应该用被动语态，介词 to 不能省。
3. C 题意为：“尼克被一家银行录用了，但是令我们惊讶的是，他没有接受。”根据主语和谓语之间存在被动关系且时态为一般过去时，可知答案为C项。
4. B 题意为：“看右边的标志。”“哦，这儿不允许吸烟。”主谓之间是被动关系，而且是陈述事实，故用一般现在时的被动语态。
5. C 根据时间状语 once 可知，此句应用一般过去时，主语和谓语之间存在被动关系，所以此句应该用一般过去时的被动语态。
6. D 主句的时态为一般将来时，所以 unless 引导的条件状语应该用一般现在时表将来，主语和谓语之间存在被动关系，故选D项。
7. C 根据时间状语 in two years 可知，此句应用一般将来时，主语和谓语之间存在被动关系，所以此句应该用将来时的被动语态。
8. B 句意为：“如果明天不下雨，去野营怎么样？”if 在此引导的是条件状语从句，应该用一般现在时表将来，因此答案为B项。
9. B 题意为：“昨天你给汤姆打电话了吗？”“是的，我打了。但是没有人接。”根据问句的时态为一般过去时，可知答语的时态也为一般过去时。
10. C 根据时间状语 now 可知，此句应用现在进行时，故选C项。
11. C when 引导的时间状语从句可以用现在进行时，表示主句和从句中的两个动作同时进行。
12. D 题意为“当他妈妈到家的时候，吉米正在看电视”。本题考查过去进行时。
13. B there be 结构的将来时是 there will be 或 there is going to be。而主语是单数，故选B。
14. B 由时间状语 soon (不久) 及从句时态可知，此句应用一般将来时。
15. B 根据时间状语 at that time (那个时候) 及从句时态可知，此句应用过去将来时，故选B项。
16. C 根据时间状语和主句的时态 (过去时) 可判断，从句应用过去将来时。
17. B 根据时间状语 for ten months 可知，此

句应用现在完成时，而且应用延续性的词，又因主语是第三人称复数，故选B项。

18. D 根据后句“我可能明天买一本”和 yet 可知，此句应该用现在完成时，故选D项。
19. C have/has gone to 意为“去某地了 (还没有回来)”。
20. B 根据句意和时间状语 before 可知，此句应用现在完成时，而且表去过某地用 have been to，故选B项。

- 二、1. is wasted 2. can be done
3. is spoken 4. be caught 5. was built
6. needs 7. are sold 8. are; told
9. to work 10. sell 11. had; come
12. are playing 13. was
14. hadn't seen 15. travels

第8章 数词

1. B 读数字时要先从右边开始确定出数位，右边开始数第三位要读 thousand，再往前数三位读 million，接着往前再数三位就是 billion；hundred, thousand, million 和 billion 都是数词不加 s，百位和十位之间读时要加 and；如果十位是 0，也读 and。
2. D 英语表示“……世纪……年代”时应为：“in the + 十年代's”，如：在 20 世纪 80 年代 = in the 1980's，表示从 1980~1989 这期间的 10 年；如果是 in 1980 = 在 1980 年，一年的时间。
3. B holiday 是可数名词，所以前面不能丢了冠词；形容词放在 a holiday 的中间，这个形容词由数词和名词复合而成，复合后名词不能加-s，two-week “两周的”。
4. A 分数的构成：分子是基数词，分母是序数词；分子大于一，分母加 s。
5. A 观察选项，理解句意，就可知要选择“6:30”这个时间的正确表达形式。有两种：half past six 和 six thirty。
6. A 世纪的表示法：“in the + 序数词 + century”。21 的序数词是基数词 twenty 后加 first。
7. D 房间号的表达属于专有名词类，也不用冠词，所以首字母要大写，号码用阿拉伯数字表达。第几排也是同样的表达方法，如：第 5 排 Row 5。
8. C 百分数的表示法：“基数词 + percent + of”。percent 不加 s。
9. D several 表达有三四个那样的基数词，thousand 是数词时，前面有基数词，它本身也不加 s；thousand 是名词时构成短语 thousands of，这个短语的前面不用基数词。
10. C 年月日的表达法：“月份 + 日期，年代”，日期写序数词或基数词都可，一般都习惯写

基数词,但读时要读成序数词。

11. B 表示某人几岁的生日的方法是“one's+序数词+birthday”。
12. C 几个半的表示法有两种:“基数词+单位名词(复数)+and half a”;“基数词+and a half+单位名词(复数)”。

第9章 非谓语动词

一、1. C 考查 why not do sth., 此结构可表示建议。

2. A 考查 make sb. do sth., made 后接动词原形。

3. B 本题动词不定式表示目的。

4. B 比较级前后结构要统一,故用动词不定式。

5. A 考查 warn sb. not to do sth., 此题 never 表示否定。

6. B the way to do “……的办法”, 动词不定式作定语。

7. B 题意为:“你能不能不在晚上把鞋扔到地板上?” would 是情态动词,其否定形式是在其后加 not, 再接动词原形。

8. D 题意为:“她的愿望是成为一名著名歌手”。动词不定式作表语。

9. C 题意为:“我们班长总是乐于助人。” be ready to do sth. 准备做某事。

10. A 第一空考查 had better do sth., 第二空考查 tell sb. not to do sth. 的用法。

11. B 题意为:“你们决定去哪里度假了吗?” 考查“疑问词+不定式”作定语。

12. C 动词 would like, want, ask, order, tell 等后面要接带 to 的动词不定式作宾语补足语。

13. B 考查 remember to do sth. 和 remember doing sth. 用法的区别。前者表示“记住做某事”,即不要忘了做某事;后者表示“记得曾经做过某事”。根据句意表示记得要告诉他,故选 B。

14. B something to eat 一些吃的东西。考查动词不定式作定语用法。

15. B 动词不定式在疑问词后作宾语。根据前一句可知表“不知选哪一个”。

16. D 题意为:“我弟弟生病住院了。”“听说这件事我很难过。” be sorry to do sth. 意为“做某事感到难过或遗憾”,这是个固定用法。

17. A be happy to do 为固定结构。根据句意可知是被邀请,即主语与 ask 是动宾关系,故用动词不定式的被动结构。

18. B 题意为:“我很抱歉,我忘了给你买邮票了。” forget to do sth. 表示“忘记要做

某事”; forget doing sth. 表示“忘记已经做过某事”。根据句意选用 forget to do sth. 结构。

19. B 题意为:“胡先生有足够的时间在两天内完成工作。”不定式作后置定语。

20. A 题意为:“她那天想要早一些到家。” want to do sth. 意为“想干某事”, want 后接带 to 的不定式作宾语。

21. B 根据 enjoy doing sth. 排除 C 选项, listen to 强调听的动作, hear 强调听的结果,此题强调听音乐的动作。故选 B。

22. C stop... from doing sth. 意为“阻止……做某事”。

23. C 本题考查非谓语动词,故排除 B 选项。be bad for 表示“对……有害”,故排除 A、D。

24. D 根据句意可知舞会将举行,而且是被动关系,故选 D。

25. B be interested in doing sth. 对做……感兴趣。介词后面的动词加-ing。

26. D be used to doing sth. 习惯于做某事,注意此处的 to 是介词。

27. C feel like doing sth. 想要做某事。

28. A keep on doing sth. 的意思是“一直做某事。” ask sb. to do sth. 意思是“要求某人做某事”。

29. D dying 是现在分词作定语,意思是“垂死的;即将死去的”。dead 意为“死的”,与逻辑不符。

30. A finish doing sth. 的意思是“做完某事”,故排除 C 和 D。get 是不及物动词不能直接接宾语,故选 A。

- 二、1. to laugh 2. to shake 3. to go
4. do 5. to make 6. to go
7. reading 8. to clean 9. to finish
10. shopping 11. to visit 12. coming
13. to shout 14. Smoking 15. to pay
16. Hearing 17. tell; to do 18. repaired

- 三、1. talking; to have classes
2. where to buy this book
3. to see 4. flying a kite
5. to learn 6. running
7. to turn off 8. doing
9. to drink 10. named

第10章 宾语从句

- 一、1. that 2. if/whether 3. whose
4. which 5. who/where 6. where
7. when 8. that 9. how
10. that 11. why

二、1. B 题意为:“你知道他昨晚什么时候上床睡

- 觉的吗?”“对不起,我不知道。我想他应该睡得挺早,因为他今天下午有英语考试。”宾语从句应该用陈述句语序;主句是一般现在时,从句可以用任何时态,根据题意可知问的是昨天晚上的事情,应该用一般过去时。
2. B 题意为:“你的经理刚才说什么?”“他问我今天早晨萨姆什么时候到公司。”由疑问句作宾语从句要用陈述句语序可排除 A、C 两项。而 that 引导陈述句。
3. A 题意为:“除了你告诉我们的关于那个年轻女士的情况之外,我们对她一无所知。”what 在句中作动词 told 的宾语。
4. A 题意为:“我想知道没有水人能活多久。”“一个星期左右。”由 about a week 可知连接词应用 how long,又因为宾语从句要用陈述句语序,故选 A。
5. C 题意为:“我不明白他说的,所以我想让他解释一下。”动词 understand 后接宾语从句,而宾语从句须用陈述句语序,排除 B 和 D;根据主句中的 did 可知从句要用一般过去时,故选 C。
6. C 题意为:“我爸爸说那本书很有用。”根据题意可知 said 后是一个陈述意义的宾语从句。宾语从句中引导词 that 通常可以省略掉,但从句的主语被 that 修饰时,引导词 that 不能省略,故选 C。
7. A 题意为:“莉莉不知道这是谁的包,所以她把它交给了警察。”D 项表示地点不符合句意。根据宾语从句中应用陈述句语序,可排除 B,疑问词不可放在句中,排除 C,故选 A。
8. C 题意为:“我的老师告诉我学习从来不嫌晚。”该句中宾语从句表示的是客观真理,无论主句为何种时态,从句仍用一般现在时。
9. C 题意为:“你认为为什么他的小说如此受欢迎?”“因为它很有意思。”根据答句中的 because 可知应用疑问词 why。当主句的谓语动词是 think, say, suppose, believe 等时,宾语从句的引导词为 who, which, when, how, why 等疑问词时,经常将这类引导词置于句首。
10. C 题意为:“你能告诉我这个 MP4 我可以借多长时间吗?”“一个月。”根据宾语从句用陈述句语序,首先排除 B、D 两项;how long 提示句子中的动词用延续性的,故选 C。

- 三、1. whether you are right
2. had something important
3. don't think Nancy will win
4. it clear that; was
5. what her son is doing

第 11 章 反意疑问句

- 一、1. C 考查祈使句的反意疑问句,不是 let's 开头用 will/won't/would you。
2. C 陈述部分为主从句的复合句,且主句的主语和谓语是 I think, I suppose, I believe, I imagine 等结构时,附加疑问句的人称和数往往要与从句的人称和数保持一致,并注意否定的转移。
3. D 陈述部分为否定,附加疑问句用肯定。而且 there be 句型附加部分也用 there。
4. A 此处 must 是对现在的情况进行推测,附加疑问句要用 isn't he。
5. C 陈述部分是感叹句时,附加疑问句用 be 的一般现在时态的否定形式。
6. B 此处 it's=it is,故附加疑问句用否定形式。
7. B 当陈述部分有含有否定前缀或否定后缀的词语时,陈述部分应视为肯定,附加疑问句仍用否定结构。
8. B hardly 本身否定,附加疑问句用肯定,故选 B。
9. A 陈述部分用动名词做主语,附加疑问句的主语用 it 代替。
10. C 此处 you'd=you had,陈述部分有 had better 时,附加疑问句用 hadn't。
11. C 当陈述部分含有 used to 时,附加疑问句可用 usedn't 或 didn't。
12. B 陈述部分含有 few, little, seldom, hardly, never, not, no, no one, nobody, nothing, none, neither 等时,附加疑问句应用肯定形式。
13. A 陈述部分为 I am 结构时,附加疑问句常用 aren't I,而不是 am not I。
14. C 陈述部分为 I wish 结构时,附加疑问句常用 may I。
15. A 陈述部分的主语是 something, anything, everything, nothing 等不定代词时,附加疑问句的主语常用 it。

- 二、1. will you 2. does he
3. didn't she 4. is he
5. is there 6. will you
7. do they 8. is she
9. doesn't he 10. does he

第 12 章 定语从句

- 一、1. that/which 2. that 3. that
4. where 5. which 6. that
7. when 8. where 9. whose
10. why 11. who/that 12. whose

- 二、1. C 先行词是人,关系代词在从句中作宾语,

故用 whom。

2. A 关系副词 when 表示时间, 在从句中作时间状语。
3. C why 是关系副词, 表示原因, 在从句中作原因状语。
4. C 关系副词 where 表示地点, 在从句中作地点状语。
5. A 先行词是人, 关系代词在从句中作主语, 故用 who。
6. C 先行词是物, 可用关系代词 which 或 that, 而且定语从句中 spent 缺宾语。
7. C 关系代词 whose 在定语从句中作 car 的定语。
8. B 先行词中有 only, all 等词修饰时, 常用 that, 不用 who 或 which。
9. C 从句中 visited 缺宾语, 而且当先行词为序数词或被序数词修饰时用 that。
10. A 虽然先行词表示的是地点, 但地点名词 the place 在后面的定语从句中作主语, 所以用 which, 不能用 where。
11. C 先行词 house 和后面的限定性定语从句的主语部分 roof 属于从属关系, 我们一般说 the roof of the house 而不说 the house's roof. 所以不用 whose 而用 of which。
12. A 先行词在后面的限定性定语从句中作宾语, 用 which。
13. C speak 意为“说话; 谈话”时为不及物动词, 后接宾语须带介词。speak to sb. 意为“对某人说话; 与某人交谈”。此时引导词作宾语可省略。
14. C in front of which 即 in front of a small house 在从句中作状语。
15. B which I have looked after 构成一个非限制性定语从句。
16. B which 引导的非限制性定语从句, 前面用逗号隔开。
17. D 在 way, distance, direction 等词后的定语从句中, 常用 that 来代替“in (或其他介词) + which 或 when, where”, 而 that 常可省略。
18. A 第一个空是由 why 引导的定语从句, why 是表原因的关系副词; 第二个空是由 that 引导的表语从句, that 为连接词, 虽无词义但不可省略。
19. A 第一个空缺一个宾语从句的引导词, 而且在句中作主语, 故排除 C、D; 第二空缺定语从句引导词, 修饰 all 并且在从句中作 knew 的宾语。
20. B 空后是定语从句修饰 research centres, 而且在从句中作地点状语, 故选 B。
21. A 分析句子结构可知空后缺主语, 故选 A。
22. D 分析整个句子可知是考查句型 “it is/

was + 被强调部分 + that/who + ...” 的疑问句形式, 故第一空填 it; 第二空是非限制性定语从句修饰 Bill, 故填 who; 第三个空填 that/who 都可以, 综合分析选 D。

三、1. A plane is a machine which/that can fly in the sky.

2. The boy with whom I was playing just now is from the USA.
3. All that they can do is to wait.
4. This is the reason why I was late this morning.
5. The girl who/that speaks English very well is from New York.

四、1. them 改为 which 由于前面的先行词是 the windows, 所以后面应该是 most of the windows, 在介词后面用 which 代替 the windows 而不是 them。

2. which 改为 that 因为在先行词前有最高级修饰, 所以关系代词只能用 that。
3. that 改为 which that 不能引导非限定性定语从句。
4. that 改为 which 介词后不能用 that, in which 相当于 where。
5. which 改为 that 先行词前有 all 修饰, 关系代词应用 that。

第 13 章 并列连词和并列句

- 一、1. D 根据题意可知, 他朋友少的原因是他在这儿仅一周, 因此答案为 D 项。
2. A 根据题意可知, 现在很累的原因是昨晚睡得晚, 因此答案为 A 项。
3. A or 在此意为“还是”, 表示选择关系。
4. D 句意为“虽然天气很冷, 但他没穿外套就出去了”。though 和 but 不能同时使用, 故选 D 项。
5. B 根据句意可知, 前后两句存在转折关系, 因此答案为 B 项。
6. C 句意为“努力学习, 你将很快赶上你的同学”, and 在此表示顺承关系。
7. C 句意为“汤姆, 离火远点, 否则你会被烧伤”。C 项符合句意, or 意为“否则”。
8. C I'd like to, but... 句型常用来陈述拒绝对方的理由。
9. C 句意为“医生尽了最大努力, 但是失败了”。由句意可知应该选择表示转折关系的连词 but。
10. A 根据句意可知表示顺承关系, 故填 and。

- 二、1. so 2. and 3. Because
4. Both; and 5. but 6. or
7. neither; nor 8. Either; or

9. not only; but also 10. though

第 14 章 从属连词与状语从句

- 一、1. because 2. such; that
3. so; that 4. Though
5. if 6. as
7. until 8. No matter
9. since
- 二、1. B while 引导时间状语从句指时间段，从句必须用延续性动词，强调主句的动作持续于从句所指的整个时间内。
2. D as soon as 引导的时间状语从句，意为“一……就……”，强调主句的动作紧接着在从句的动作之后发生。而且常用现在时态表将来。
3. C 题中前句话的 if 引导宾语从句，意为“是否”，根据题意用一般将来时，后句话的 if 引导条件状语从句，意为“如果”。含条件状语从句的主从复合句，如果主句用一般将来时态，那么从句要用一般现在时表示将来。
4. A when 引导时间状语从句，既可以指时间点也可以指时间段；既可以表示比从句更早或更晚的动作，也可以表示与从句同时进行的动作。
5. D 题意：如果苏珊不快点她就不能按时到达机场了。unless 引导条件状语从句，意为“除非”，相当于“if ... not ...”，有时两者可以互换，只是 unless 的语气更强烈一些。
6. B until 引导时间状语从句，常用于“not ... until ...”结构，意为“直到……才……”。
7. B before 引导时间状语从句，意为“在……之前”，表示他康复重返工作至少还要 3 个月的时间。when 引导时间状语从句，意为“当……的时候”；since 引导时间状语从句，意为“自从”，表示从某个时候一直延续到现在，常与现在完成时连用；that 用于名词性从句或定语从句。
8. B 考查状语从句中连词的选用。根据后面的 in time 可知用表示时间的连词。
- 三、1. It is/has been a long time since
2. where I can see
3. It wasn't long before
4. so/as long as you keep quiet
5. before I could speak
6. when you are not in the room
7. as soon as he arrived in Shanghai

第 15 章 主谓一致

1. B either ... or 连接主语，谓语单复数遵循就近原则，而且这里时间状语 now 说明应用现在进

- 行时态，故选 is。
2. A 表时间、度量、里程等作主语时，谓语用单数。根据后一句可知两天时间不够，故选否定的 isn't。
3. B each of ... 作主语，谓语用单数，故选 B。
4. A neither ... nor 连接主语，谓语单复数遵循就近原则。这里应由 I 决定谓语单复数，故选 A。
5. B there be ... 句型的单复数由后面的名词决定，这里是复数 words，而且根据后句可知没有多少新单词，故选 B。
6. A the number of ... 作主语，谓语用单数；句意为“我们学校学生人数是 1200”，故选 is。
7. B Maths 虽然是以-s 结尾，但是其实是单数形式，故谓语用单数形式，即选 is。
8. C 主语带有 with + ... 结构，谓语单复数以前面的主语为主。这里主语是 the boy，故谓语用单数，而且根据从句的时态可知主句应用过去进行时态。
9. D 这里主语是 Every one except + ...，谓语单词单复数以 except 前面的主语为主，而且从句谓语是一般过去时态，故主句也用一般过去时的第三人称单数形式。
10. A 根据前一句可知我们都不想去那里了，因为那个地方一点都没趣。而选项中只有 A 表否定，故选 A。
11. B 主语中带有 but 时，谓语单复数以前面为主，故排除 A、C；根据句意可知是除了 Jane 没有人知道这个秘密。故选 knows。
12. C glasses, trousers 等作主语，谓语用复数；单数如果是 a pair of, the cup of, a piece of 等作主语，谓语则用单数。根据句意应用一般现在时态，故选 C。
13. D both ... and 连接主语时谓语用复数，而且根据句意应是被动态，故选 D。
14. C 度量作主语谓语用单数，而且根据下面的答语可知两米不够长，所以他可能需要更多，故选 C。
15. B the + 形容词作主语，谓语用复数；而且根据句意老人是被照顾的，故选 B。
16. A family 是一个集合名词，指“家人”时谓语用复数；指“家庭”时谓语用单数，故选 A。
17. B the + 名词 + and + the + 名词表示两个人，故谓语用复数；且根据语境应用现在完成时态，故选 B。
18. D All but one 作主语谓语用复数，just now 是过去时间状语，故选 D。
19. A as well as 连接主语时，谓语单复数以前面为主；而且 be to blame 意为“受到责备”，故选 A。
20. D not only ... but also 连接主语时谓语动词单复数遵循就近原则，故选 D。

第 16 章 倒装句

1. B 以否定词或半否定词开头的句子, 要用部分倒装, 排除 A 和 D。另外, no sooner ... than ... (一……就……) 是固定搭配, 且 no sooner 分句中的谓语通常用过去完成时, 而 than 分句中的谓语用一般过去时。
2. B 由前半句可判断, 现在还没有去舞会, 是将来时态; 又因为在条件状语从句中要用一般现在时代替一般将来时, 所以正确答案是 B。If she does, so will mine. = If she goes to the ball, my girlfriend will go, too.
3. D 当 not only ... but also ... 不是连接两个不同的主语时, 以 not only 开头的句子要用部分倒装, 所以排除 A 和 C。又因为 it is necessary 后的 that 从句一般要用 “should + 动词原形”, 所以只有 D 正确。
4. A 主语是名词时, 其后要倒装, 但主语是代词时不用倒装。
5. A 因为 nowhere 是否定词, 以否定词开头的句子, 要用部分否定。
6. A 因为以 not until 开头的句子要用部分倒装, 所以排除 B 和 D; 又因为 2003 年 12 月是过去时间, 用一般过去时, 所以选 A。
7. A 因为 “only + 状语” 放在句首时, 主句要用部分倒装, 所以只有 A 正确。
8. D 因为 “nor + 情态动词、助动词或 be + 主语” 表示 “……也不” 之意, 又由前文的 saw 可知, hear 也是一般过去时, 所以用助动词 did。
9. C never 开头用倒装句, “在讨论时, 我发表看法之前没想到伤害你的感情”, 过去的过去, 用过去完成时。
10. C 以 here, there, up, down, in, out, now, then, away, off 等副词开头时, 常用完全倒装。句意: 我们要坐的公共汽车走了, 我们将不得不等下一辆。

第 17 章 强调句

1. B 本句是强调句的特殊疑问句。
2. C 本句是强调句的感叹句。
3. A 考查 “It's not until ... that” 句型。
4. A 考查 “It is + 被强调部分 + that ...” 强调句型的一般疑问句。
5. C 本句是一个强调句, 强调的是时间状语从句 “when she was about to go to bed”。
6. C 本句是一个强调句, 强调的是时间状语 at Christmas。
7. B 强调主语, 后面的单复数与被强调部分一致。
8. C 本句是含有定语从句的强调句。
9. A 本句是一个强调句, 强调的是地点状语从句。

10. C 本句是强调祈使句, 只用助动词 do。

第 18 章 名词性从句

1. C 根据宾语从句用陈述句语序和答语是时间状语可知答案为 C 项。
2. C 题意为 “任何犯错误的人都必须纠正他们”。whoever 作主语, 引导主语从句。
3. C that 引导同位语从句, 说明 promise 的具体内容。
4. A 宾语从句要用陈述句语序, 所以排除 B 和 C 项, 再根据答语可知对方询问的是买关于外星人书籍的地点, 因此答案为 A 项。
5. A 根据宾语从句用陈述句语序可知答案为 A 项。
6. A 宾语从句用陈述句语序, 对方询问的是火车晚点的原因。
7. C 引导主语从句时只能用 whether。
8. A that 在主语从句中不充当任何成分, 无词义, 只起连接作用。
9. B where 引导表语从句, 在从句中作状语, 表示放东西的地点, there 不能引导表语从句。
10. A what 在表语从句中作 takes 的宾语, 构成 “It takes sth. to do sth.” 的句型, 答案为 A。

第 19 章 独立主格与省略

1. B 本题属于 “There being + 名词 (代词)” 结构, 在句子中作原因状语。句意为 “因为没有公共汽车, 我们不得不步行回家”。
2. C 本题属于独立主格结构中的 “名词 + 现在分词” 形式。句意为 “如果时间允许的话, 明天下午我将和你去那里”。
3. C 本题属于独立主格结构中的 “名词 + 过去分词” 形式。句意为 “说再见后, 我们都高兴地回家了”。
4. A 本题属于独立主格结构中的 “It being + 名词 (代词)” 形式。由于 weather 为不可数名词, 故不能选 D。句意为 “天气很好, 我们都兴高采烈地去游泳”。
5. C 本题属于独立主格结构中的 “名词 + 过去分词” 形式。句意为 “发出信号后, 公共汽车立刻启动了”。
6. D 本题属于独立主格结构中的 “名词 + 现在分词” 形式。句意为 “她站在那里, 眼泪从她的脸颊上滚落下来”。
7. B 本题属于独立主格结构中的 “名词 + 现在分词” 形式。句意为 “春天来了, 树叶正在变绿”。
8. B 本题属于独立主格结构中的 “名词 + 过去分词” 形式。句意为 “我的字典丢了, 我不得不买本新的”。
9. B 本题属于独立主格结构中的 “with + 名词 + 形容词” 形式。句意为 “过去我习惯开着窗户睡”。

觉”。

10. B 本题属于独立主格结构中的“with+名词+形容词”形式。句意为“关上门，他离开了房间”。
11. C 在省略答语中，可用动词 do, does, did 代替前面相同的内容，避免重复。
12. A 用 so 和 not 作替代词，分别表示肯定和否定的看法，以避免重复。可用于此结构的常用动词有 hope, think, be afraid, believe, expect, suppose, guess, imagine 等。
13. C 表否定推测时，可以说 hope/be afraid not, 或者说 don't think/believe/expect/suppose so。
14. B 动词不定式的省略结构要保留不定式符号 to, 常见的动词结构有 be glad (happy, pleased, ready, etc.) to, have to, be able to, ought to, be going to, used to, expect to, wish to, persuade sb. to, ask sb. to 等。
15. D used to be 中的 be 不能省略。
16. D 在不定式的完成式中，其省略结构必须保留 have, 如 be to have, ought to have, would like to have 等。
17. C Anything else 在此处是“Do you have anything else to ask?”的省略形式，即定语、谓语和主语被省略。其余三者要么不符合语法规则(A, B), 要么不符合语境(D)。
18. B 根据句意“此项工程(比去年那项工程)进展要顺利得多”。可知应该选 B。that of last year 中的 that 指“the project”, 相同的内容被省略。
19. D 这是“Not a soul could be seen”的省略式。A 和 B 时态有误, C 结构不对。
20. C 在并列句中, 后一分句常省略与前一句相同的部分。

第 20 章 易混词辨析

- 一、1. C 考查 question 和 problem 之间的区别。根据答语“我学英语有麻烦”可知问句是“你有什么问题?” question 是指因主观产生怀疑时而提出的问题; problem 指客观存在的问题, 一般很难解决的问题, 故选 C。
2. B lesson 指教科书中按某一特定内容所分成的单位, 或在某一单位时间内所授的“课程(内容)”, 且 lesson 应为复数。class “课堂, 班级”, 指同一个班的学生聚集在一起上的“课”或“一节课”, 但并不指上课的内容。
3. B the number of 表示“……的数量”, 指具体一个数目, 后接复数名词, 这一结构作主语, 谓语动词用单数形式。a number of 意思是“很多, 好些”, 只能修饰复数名词, 不能修饰不可数名词; 修饰主语时, 谓语动

词用复数形式。第一空由 is 可排除 A 和 C; 另外, 表示分数时, 分子用基数词, 分母用序数词, 当分子大于 1 时, 分母用复数形式。

4. A clothes 总以复数形式出现, 指人们穿的各种具体的衣服; cloth 指做衣服等用的材料; dress 为可数名词, 指女性穿在外面的连衣裙; clothing 为衣服的总称。
5. B voice 为可数名词, 指人说话和唱歌的声音; noise 指大的、令人不舒服的和难以忍受的“噪声, 喧闹声, 吵闹声”; sound “声音”, 指可以听到的任何声音。根据句意可知是发出噪音, 故选 B。
6. D 根据句意可知汤姆把南京看成他的第二个家。family 表示“家庭”; room 表示“房间”; house 指家存在的地点, 重点强调房子; home 表示“家, 家庭, 住所”, 强调一个人以及被抚养长大的环境。
7. C 根据句意“电梯里没有容下我们的空间”可知此处应用 room。room 作不可数名词时表示人或物体所占的“空间, 场所”、处事的“余地”等; floor 表示室内的地面; ground 表示“地, 土地”, 主要指大地表面; place 为可数名词, 指人们从事各种活动的“地方, 场所, 位置”。
8. D 根据句意“要习惯另一个国家的风俗习惯很难”可知选 D。custom 表示“习惯, 习俗, 风俗”, 指个人逐渐养成的习惯(可与 habit 换用), 或指社会、国家、集体等多年形成的且具有不成文法律约束力的固定习俗, 具有群体性; habit 主要指个人的“习惯”, 具有个体性; customs 表示“海关”。
9. A couple 指任何两件同类的人或事物; pair 指两件不能分开的统一体, 缺一不可, 可以用于人或物。根据句意“我在房间找到两只袜子, 但只有一只是我的”可知选 A。
10. D the other “两者中的另一个”; another “三者或三者以上中的任何一个”; other 为形容词, 后面接名词复数; one another “互相”; have another try “再试一次”。应选 D。
11. A 由题意可知是没有人接电话, 用 no one; 在你给我打电话的时候, 我正在散步, 指的是进行的动作, 而且发生在过去, 所以用过去进行时, 故选 A。
12. D other 为形容词, 后跟名词; another 表示“另一个”时指的是三者或三者以上中的某一个; others 是代词, 意为“另外一些”; the other “(两者中的)另一个”。根据前面的“两件短裙”判断, 表示另一件应该选 D。

13. D 因此空修饰 Chinese “汉语”，为不可数名词，故排除 A、C，又因前面有 only，表示“仅会一点”，故选 D。
14. C both “两者都”；either “（两者中的）任何一个”；neither “（两者）都不”；none “（三者或三者以上）都不”。根据题目中的“your mom or dad”和“go there alone”可知，父母两者都不去，故选 C。
15. B 题意：我收集了许多雪球。如果你喜欢，可以拿一个。one 泛指上文提到的可数名词 snow globes 中的一个；either 指两者中的“任何一个”；it 指上文提到的同一物；none 表示三者以上范围的全部否定，意为“没有一个”。
16. C 在否定句中修饰不可数名词，表示“一些”用 any，故选 C。many 修饰可数名词；lots 后需加 of 才可修饰名词；some 用于肯定句中。
17. B 根据题意“该走了，人都到齐了吗？”“没有，萨姆还在路上。”可知选 everyone “每个人，所有的人”。no one 意为“没有人”；someone 意为“有人、某人”；anyone 意为“任何人”。
18. D either “（两者中的）任何一个”；neither “（两者）都不”；all 指“全部”，一般指三者或三者以上；both “两者都”。根据句意“两件衬衫都要”，故选 D。
19. A 根据句意“我想我已经准备好一切”，故不需要什么东西了，不定代词 nothing 表示否定，故选 A。
20. D 表示交通方式，与 bus, bike, plane, train 等连用通常用 by，其后不接冠词。
21. B across 表示从物体表面“穿过”；through 表示从物体的内部“穿过”；over 表示从上方“跨过”。根据句意“月光透过窗子，房间看起来宁静而美丽”可知应从物体的内部穿过，故选 B。
22. B in 后只能接一段时间，表示“在……时间后”或“在……之内”；for 也接一段时间但它表示“达……之久”，after 表示“……后”，接时间段，表示从过去某个时间点算起一段时间后，用于过去时或在某个特定的时间后，可用将来时；during 表示“在……期间”。根据 two day's time 和句意可知选 B。
23. A 表示具体款项或总钱数用 for，故选 A。
24. B “with”意为“用……”，表示使用有形的工具，后面的名词一般要有冠词。
25. B besides 意为“除……之外（还有）”指在整体中加入一部分；except 意为“除……之外，但不包括……在内”，多用于引起同

类事物中被排除的一项；except for 也表示“除……之外”，但用以说明除外者异于包括在内者；beside 表示“在……的旁边”。根据句意“学生们每天都有课，除了星期天”可知选 B。

26. A in the front of 意思为“在……的最前部”，指在某物的内部；in front of 表示“在……前面”，指在某物的外部。根据句意“为了清楚地听到老师讲课，他来得很早，坐在教室的前面”可知选 A。
27. A 表达在某范围之内应用介词 in。表示方位时，某范围之外接壤的地方用 on，表示在某范围之外不接壤的地方用 to，故选 A。
28. B 关于政治、理论、艺术等重大事件用介词 on。
29. A because 表示原因最强，经常回答 why 提出的问题。since “既然”，as “由于”，说明已知或明显的原因，比 because 弱；for 表示原因最弱，表示补充说明原因。根据题意“天亮了，因为鸟在唱歌”可知不是直接原因，因为鸟不唱歌，天到时候也会亮，故选 A。
30. D work 为不可数名词故可排除 A 和 C。so 和 such 表示“如此……以至于”的结构为“so + 形容词 + a/ an + 名词 + that”，“such + a/ an + 形容词 + 名词 + that”，故选 D。

- 二、1. four dozen boxes 2. a double knock
3. ten million 4. Hundreds of people
5. the first month 6. At first
7. the second largest 8. a second pair
9. scores of/dozens of
10. first leave home
11. None of them agreed to Bela's plan.
12. I heard about him but I don't know him.
13. After he had read the text, Li Ming went on to do the exercises.
14. He refused to attend the meeting.
15. When did you receive the letter?
16. Bring Mary to the party with you.
17. Don't borrow money from me!
18. I believe him, but I can't believe in him.
19. He is the happiest man on the earth.
20. When do you go to bed at night?
- 三、1. sleepy; asleep 2. lonely 3. everyday
4. great 5. certain 6. high 7. ill
8. dark 9. for 10. before 11. too
12. Almost 13. sometime 14. close
15. hardly 16. too much; much too



第 21 章 情景交际

- 一、1. A “How are you doing?” 意为“你怎么样?” 常用来问候对方的情况。
2. C “How is it going?” 意为“近来如何?” 用来询问对方的近况。
3. A 介绍别人时, 常用 “This is...” 句型。
4. D 根据句子 “I’m afraid I have to go now.” 可知对方在道别, 因此用 see you (再见) 回答。
5. D 睡觉前常说 good night (晚安)。
6. D 当别人提醒你做错了某件事时, 可以用 “Sorry, I won’t do it again. (对不起, 我不会再做这样的事了。)” 来作答, 表示道歉。
7. B 在此可以用 “Never mind. (别放在心上。)” 来回答因别人弄坏闹钟所作出的道歉。
8. B It doesn’t matter. 不要紧。
9. B 根据答语 “I’m not thirsty.” 可知用 No thanks, 对别人提供的帮助表示委婉的拒绝。
10. D Good idea. 意为“好主意”。
11. A Of course not. 意为“当然不。”
12. C have a good time 意为“玩得高兴”, 常用来对对方表示祝愿。
13. C Congratulations 用来对对方的成功表示祝贺。
14. B 根据答语 “I’ll have to take part in the writing competition.” 可知没有时间, 因此用 B 项作答。
15. A 打电话时称呼自己用 “This is...” 句型。
16. B What can I do for you? 意为“我能为你做什么?” 店员常用来询问顾客买什么。
17. B This way, please. 意为“请走这边”。
18. B How long have you been like this? 意为“你像这样多长时间了?”, 常用来询问病情。
19. A “Yes?” 在此意为“什么事?” 用来应答对方的询问。
20. B 根据答语 “It’s fine.” 可知询问的是天气状况, 因此答案为 B 项。
21. A 根据答语 “I asked you to turn down your radio a little.” 可知正确答案为 A 项。
22. B NO PARKING 意为“禁止停车”。
23. A 根据答语 “Good idea.” 可知对方在提出建议。因此正确答案为 A 项。
24. B 根据答语中的 “Let’s go.” 可知正确答案为 B 项。
25. A 根据答语中的句子 “It’s important for us students.” 可知, 听者表示赞同。
26. B 根据句子 “Studying is more important for them.” 可知对上句中的观点不认同。
27. A 根据句子 “It’s very interesting.” 可知正确答案为 A 项。
28. B 根据答语的后半部分 “because I don’t listen to the weather report.” 可知对于明天是否下雨拿不准。
29. A 根据句子 “It has her name on it.” 可知对方确定是简的笔记本。
30. A 根据答语 “Tea is my favorite drink.” 可知对方喜欢的是茶。
31. C Come on 在此意为“加油”, 表示鼓励。
32. D 根据答语 “They’re too boring.” 可知正确答案为 D 项。
33. A Well done 意为“干得好”, 常用来对别人取得的成绩表示满意。
34. C 根据 dirty 是形容词, 可知应该用 how 形成感叹句结构。
35. B “Take it easy.” 意为“别紧张。” 用来安慰对方。
36. D “I’m sorry to hear that.” 用于听到不好的消息。
37. A how soon 意为“多久”, 常用于将来时, 其答语常是 in 引导的时间状语从句。
38. B how long 意为“多长时间”, 常用来询问动词持续发生的时间有多长。
39. A “What’s the date?” 用来询问日期。
40. C 根据答语是地点, 因此用 where 来提问。
41. B 问句询问的是医院的方位, 因此正确答案为 B 项。
42. C 答语是有关距离的, 因此用 how far 来提问。
43. C 答语是有关价格的, 因此问句应该询问的是价格。
44. D 根据答语可知对方询问的是鞋子的尺寸, 因此正确答案为 D 项。
45. C 根据问句回答的是年龄可知对方询问的是年龄, 故答案为 C 项。
46. B 答语是表示数量的词, 询问不可数名词的数量用 how much。
47. C 根据答语 “Is tomorrow his birthday?” 可知, 应该用 what for 来询问原因更合适题意。
48. A 根据答语可知对方询问的是职业, 因此正确答案为 A 项。

附录

不规则动词的过去式和过去分词

(1) 动词的原形、过去式和过去分词同形 (AAA 型)

原形	过去式	过去分词
burst 爆炸	burst	burst
cost 花费	cost	cost
cast 抛, 投	cast	cast
hurt 弄伤	hurt	hurt
let 让	let	let
read 读	read [red]	read [red]
split 分裂	split	split

原形	过去式	过去分词
shut 关闭	shut	shut
cut 砍, 割	cut	cut
hit 击, 打	hit	hit
inset 嵌入	inset	inset
put 放, 记下	put	put
set 安置	set	set
spread 展开	spread	spread

(2) 动词的过去式和过去分词同形 (ABB 型)

原形	过去式	过去分词
baby-sit 担任 临时保姆	baby-sat	baby-sat
bend 使弯曲	bent	bent
bleed 流血	bled	bled
bring 带来	brought	brought
buy 买	bought	bought
cling 粘着	clung	clung
deal 处理	dealt	dealt
feed 喂	fed	fed
fight 作战	fought	fought
find 发现	found	found
get 得到	got	got, gotten
hear 听到	heard	heard
hold 保持	held	held
lead 领导	led	led
lend 借给	lent	lent
make 制作	made	made

原形	过去式	过去分词
meet 遇到	met	met
pay 支付	paid	paid
seek 寻觅	sought	sought
send 寄; 送	sent	sent
shoot 射击	shot	shot
sleep 睡	slept	slept
spend 花费	spent	spent
sting 蜇, 叮	stung	stung
hang 挂	hung	hung
swing 摇摆	swung	swung
tell 告诉	told	told
understand 理解	under- stood	understood
win 获胜	won	won
foretell 预言	foretold	foretold
bind 捆	bound	bound



原形	过去式	过去分词
breed 养育	bred	bred
build 建造	built	built
catch 捕捉	caught	caught
creep 爬行	crept	crept
dig 挖	dug	dug
feel 触摸	felt	felt
flee 逃跑	fled	fled
forget 忘记	forgot	forgot, forgotten
have, has 有	had	had
hide 隐藏	hid	hid, hidden
lay 放置	laid	laid
leave 离开	left	left
lose 遗失	lost	lost
mean 意思	meant	meant

原形	过去式	过去分词
misunder- stood 误解	misunder- stood	misunder- stood
say	said 说	said
sell 卖	sold	sold
shine 发光	shone	shone
sit 坐	sat	sat
slide 滑行	slid	slid
stick 刺	stuck	stuck
strike 敲, 击	struck	struck/ stricken
sweep 打扫	swept	swept
teach 教	taught	taught
think 想	thought	thought
weep 流泪	wept	wept
wind 蜿蜒	wound	wound

(3) 不规则动词的过去分词与原形相同 (ABA 型)

原形	过去式	过去分词
become 变成	became	become
overcome 克服	overcame	overcome

原形	过去式	过去分词
come 来	came	come
run 跑	ran	run

(4) 不规则动词的原形、过去式和过去分词都不相同 (ABC 型)

原形	过去式	过去分词
arise 发生, 出现	arose	arisen
be(am, is, are)是	was(am/is), were(are)	been
bite 咬	bit	bitten/bit
break 打破	broke	broken
draw 画; 拉, 拖	drew	drawn
drive 驾驶	drove	driven
do, does 做	did	done
fly 飞	flew	flown
foresee 预知	foresaw	foreseen

原形	过去式	过去分词
freeze 结冰	froze	frozen
go 去	went	gone
know 知道	knew	known
mistake 误认	mistook	mistaken
begin 开始	began	begun
bear 生(孩子); 承担	bore	borne/born
blow 吹	blew	blown
choose 选择	chose	chosen
drink 喝	drank	drunk
eat 吃	ate	eaten

原形	过去式	过去分词
fall 掉落	fell	fallen
forbid 禁止	forbade	forbidden
forgive 原谅	forgave	forgiven
give 给	gave	given
grow 成长	grew	grown
lie 躺	lay	lain
ride 骑	rode	ridden
ring 打电话	rang	rung
see 看	saw	seen
show 显露	showed	shown, showed
sow 种植	sowed	sown, sowed
steal 偷	stole	stolen

原形	过去式	过去分词
swear 发誓	swore	sworn
take 带走	took	taken
throw 扔	threw	thrown
weave 编织	wove	woven
rise 上升	rose	risen
shake 摇	shook	shaken
sing 唱歌	sang	sung
speak 说话	spoke	spoken
strive 努力	strove	striven
swim 游泳	swam	swum
tear 撕碎	tore	torn
wear 穿着	wore	worn
write 书写	wrote	written

(5) 不规则动词的过去式和过去分词有两种形式

原形	过去式	过去分词
awake 唤醒	awoke/awaked	awoken/awaked
bet 赌	bet/betted	bet/betted
bless 祝福	blessed/blest	blessed/blest
burn 燃烧	burned/burnt	burned/burnt
dream 做梦	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt
kneel 屈膝	knelt/kneeled	knelt/kneeled
knit 编织	knitted/knit	knitted/knit
lean (使) 倚, 靠	leaned/leant	leaned/leant
learn 学习	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
light 点燃	lighted/lit	lighted/lit
rid 免除	rid/ridded	rid/ridded
sink 下沉	sank/sunk	sunk/sunken
smell 发出气味	smelled/smelt	smelled/smelt
speed 急行	sped/speeded	sped/speeded
spell 拼写	spelled/spelt	spelled/spelt
spill 使溢出	spilled/spilt	spilled/spilt
spit 吐出	spat/spit	spat/spit
spoil 损害	spoiled/spoilt	spoiled/spoilt
sweat 出汗	sweated/sweat	sweated/sweat

Images have been losslessly embedded. Information about the original file can be found in PDF attachments. Some stats (more in the PDF attachments):

```
{
  "before_pdg2pic_conversion": {
    "filename": "MTI5MDY1OTAuemlw",
    "filename_decoded": "12906590.zip",
    "filesize": 47401468,
    "md5": "074589756e27b3986e6045fa2f770639",
    "header_md5": "f242290a7696e05099516d508c9593dd",
    "sha1": "25374ffbefe4edfa651735aea4f6caca875bc03b",
    "sha256": "f295efc227bfe8128d2e13652730e0529e2ffa5e7b07a16a67e4af93441541b",
    "crc32": 2984054465,
    "zip_password": "wcpfxk&^TDCwcpfxk",
    "uncompressed_size": 55772731,
    "pdg_dir_name": "",
    "pdg_main_pages_found": 162,
    "pdg_main_pages_max": 162,
    "total_pages": 170,
    "total_pixels": 838574760
  },
  "after_pdg2pic_conversion": {
    "filename": "MTI5MDY1OTAuemlw",
    "filename_decoded": "12906590.zip",
    "filesize": 47211972,
    "md5": "6b7045ab09a8670a30786dfaf20b3812",
    "header_md5": "ce45e68e811e1d7235b1af70e48379eb",
    "sha1": "3372255d794a60da85251f26b961fec79682c931",
    "sha256": "9634144472da30223d72bdda1d27b38cbf19215400a5f5ff4f9d8627e98f3993",
    "crc32": 3092217872,
    "zip_password": "",
    "uncompressed_size": 55769524,
    "pdg_dir_name": "",
    "pdg_main_pages_found": 162,
    "pdg_main_pages_max": 162,
    "total_pages": 170,
    "total_pixels": 1055906560
  },
  "pdf_generation_missing_pages": false
}
```